

Book 10

*There is no copyright for this book. This is God's Word and God's Word is free.
It may be copied freely on condition that the text will not be changed.*

*Original German book: "Das grosse Evangelium Johannes" (1851-1864).
This Book 25 is translated from the German book X 219 to XI 77.*

1. SIMON CRITICIZES THE SONG OF SALOMON



SAY to Simon: “Is your friend a great friend of Salomon? And what does he understands from the High Song? Tell Me how far you already have progressed with it!”

[2] Says Simon: “Lord and Master of heaven and this earth, may I speak freely as my tongue has grown, then I talk with pleasure. If however I have to search for words, I’m completely shut up and nothing will come out!”

[3] I said: “Speak like your tongue has grown; since your jokes and humor originates from a good seed!”

[4] Says Simon: “Ah, if so we will be able to say something! But of course it will not reach beyond my very simple mind; however, my opinion will not be unhealthy!”

[5] You, o Lord and Master have asked how far we have progressed regarding the High Song! Help, Elias, I haven’t made any progress at all; since I would be sorry for the time lost! But Gaby already has memorized the whole of the first chapter. He still licks and chews at it and by times takes two cheeks full; but about the meaning of this chapter he knows just as much what I know about the deepest bottom of the sea. The best about it is that the more one reads the first chapter of this song, the less one understands it! And if you finally have memorized it, one understands nothing at all!”

[6] I said: “Yes, do you also know the first chapter by heart?”

[7] Says Simon: “He – droned it so many times to me, that unfortunately I also, to my biggest weariness, knows it word for word by heart! To talk to the Scythians (barbarian rider nation) is much more entertaining than listening to the High Song of Salomon. Who finds something in it must be child of very curios parents. I regard it as nonsense! As beautiful, true and good the Proverbs of Salomon are and also his sermons, just as silly and meaningless are his High Song. Who finds more in it than the work of a fool, apparently has a perfect sick brain!

[8] For example what does it mean: ‘He kisses me with the kiss of his mouth; since your love is lovelier than wine.’ Who is ‘he’

and who is 'me' who kisses with the mouth of the equally unknown 'his'!? Does this 'he' also have other foreign mouths in his face? This must be quite a miraculous odd being!

[9] The post-sentence of this first verse apparently seems to contain the reason for the desire expressed in the first part of the sentence; but there 'he' is referred to in the second person and one cannot be absolutely sure that under the expression 'your love', which is lovelier than wine, is meant the love of 'he'. And if you don't know who is 'he' and who is 'me', how should one know who is he, who's love in the second person is lovelier than wine?

[10] By the way, with that, love is not really complimented, if one says it is lovelier than wine, without pre indication that the wine is especially delightful indeed. Since there exist also very wretched and bad wines! If however, love is only more delightful or lovelier than wine, irrespective its quality, then such love is truly not so special! Above all this chatting there surely might be some extraordinary meaning in it, but on this earth I never will find it.

[11] To still add some more to the abundance of nonsense already shown, I want to stick the second sentence to the first, which reads as follows if my memory serves me right: 'That one smells your good ointment; your name is spilled ointment, this is why the maidens love you.' According to my understanding the second verse fits precisely the first one like a whole house on one eye! What is this ointment and to whom does it belong? Who should smell the ointment? How can somebody's name be a spilled ointment, and why should he especially of that be loved by the maidens? What are these maidens?

[12] Therefore just go, great Salomon, with all your high wisdom! Just one word from You, o Lord, holds for me a thousand times thousand times greater value than all the high wisdom of Salomon! Now I already have said enough about Salomon! O Lord, I ask You, do not ask me anymore about further verses, since they surpassing the Scythians by far!"

[13] I said: "Very well, My dear Simon, could you also recite to

Me the admonishing words, which I spoke to those who did not wanted to leave the mountain because of the most beautiful morning, upon which words you stated that they surely would not contain any inner, spiritual meaning? If you still can remember them, recite them to Me once more!”

[14] Says Simon with a somewhat embarrassed face: “O Lord and Master, if my memory does not deceives me, the few words were as follows: ‘Below at the tables in the open the same morning is present like here on the mountain; on the short route below enjoy it, and below you will enjoy it twice as much. Our bodies need strengthening and therefore let’s quickly go down below to the tables!’ I believe that You, o Lord and Master, have spoken these words?!”

[15] I said: “Very good, My dear Simon! You have recited the sentence word for word absolute correctly. But what would you say, if I now say to you, that such spoken admonishing sentence is the same and regarded fulfilled, as the two verses of the High Song of Salomon which you have recited to Me?! Can you think of any possibility to this extend?”

[16] Says Simon: “Before understanding this, I rather understand how this considerable lake will turn into the most flourishing dry land by tomorrow. Since what You, o Lord, has spoken on the mountain, was totally clear, and we all understood only too well what we, most pleasantly, had to do, namely going below cheerfully and sit at the tables to strengthen our bodies with a most well prepared morning meal! Who doesn’t have understood this, must have been stone-deaf.

[17] But who also understands the two verses of the High Song? According to the natural sense, as I have shown, they are utter nonsense! But if so, who can in all seriousness look for a highly wise, spiritual meaning therein? This appears to me as if I had to imagine that a dump idiot, who is more animal than human, should be a wise Plato! By the way, everything is possible, why not this?! I just state here as I feel it right now.”

[18] I said: “Even the better; since the more impossibilities you find therein, the more marvelous you will experience the

illumination afterwards: But it is also likewise miraculous that you and others with open eyes still cannot see and with open ears still do not hear! But let's leave it at that! Since you know the High Song so well, recite the third verse to Me as well, and I will be able to solve the inextricable riddle fully to your satisfaction!"

[19] Says Simon: "Oh no, even the third verse?! Out of love for You, o Lord, I'm pleased to do everything You ask of me; but I can assure You that this nearly turns my stomach upside down!

[20] The third verse is quite confusing. If my memory serves me right, the famous third verse reads as follows: 'Pull me behind you, and we walk! The king guides me to his chambers. We are rejoicing and are happy about you; we think more of your love than your wine. The devoted love you.'

[21] There it is! Who can digest it, should digest it! If only at the start it would have said: 'Pull me behind you, and I walk!'; but in the after sentence it only says: 'and we walk!' Who is 'he' who wants to be pulled behind, and who are 'we' who walk?

[22] 'The king guides me to his chamber.' Which king, the everlasting or any temporary and worldly one? Nevertheless, this sentence is still one of the best.

[23] 'We rejoice and are happy for you.' Here I only want to know who is 'we' and who is 'he', that we should be happy about!

[24] Further the certain strangers think about the equally unknown love more than the wine, about which it is also not said of which quality it is!

[25] Who in the end is the highly unknown 'you', who should be loved by the devoted? Oh, the most undetermined of all manners of speaking!

[26] What poorest fools are we humans on this earth! He starts with nothing, lives with nothing and finally ends with nothing. Even if he believes to understand something during his better and brighter periods of his life, but unfortunately gets in contact with the High Song of Salomon, the fool is fully made; since the

moment a person is made attentive by another person through word or scripture, that his wisdom is absolutely limited, then the whole person has come to an end, which means, he still continues to live, but as a fool who is not able to understand and comprehend anything further! Once a person like me has come to this point, where he cannot go further, he turns around and begins to vegetate just like an animal. What for any further troubles for nothing and a thousand times nothing?!

[27] Truly, Lord and Master, You have shown us during this night on the mountain things like no mortal human has ever seen on this earth. I now understand a great deal, but why do I not understand the wisdom of Salomon? Is it for no person at all not allowed to understand it, or is it actually – as it appears outwardly – a devote insanity, thus completely incomprehensible? Or are any secrets hidden therein, which are of the greatest importance for life?

[28] If the one or the other, say it to me, since only You I believe what You in all seriousness has to say about it; since You can understand the High Song if it can be understood in any way! But if the whole High Song is only a last Salomon wisdom scam, then also tell me, and I immediately will throw the High Song into a mud pool, so that its inhabitants can study the wisdom of Salomon!”

2. HOW TO UNDERSTAND THE SONG OF SALOMON

[1] I said: “Friend, you are getting a little too far with your jokes, and I also want to say to you, what once a famous painter has said to his shoemaker! But with you, up to now, it cannot be otherwise; since according to Salomon everything has its time on this earth. But now gather yourself properly and with a lot of good will, and the High Song of Salomon will be made clearer to you, and how it completely corresponds with My short admonishing words on the mountain.

[2] Salomon in his High Song has done nothing else than describing prophetically My current being to the people under

all kinds of metaphors which are full of correspondence, from deed to deed, from position to position and from effect to effect. I am his only object; the 'he' and the 'you' and the 'him' are all referring to Me. But who speaks out of Salomon with Me, is his singular spirit, and in plural all the spirits of the people under the king- and rule spirit of Salomon, who so to speak are presented as morally one person.

[3] Where it says: 'He kisses me with the kiss of his mouth', it means the following: The Lord speaks out of His truly own mouth to me, Salomon, and through me to the nation of Israel and through it to all the nations on earth; the Lord does not speak pure words of wisdom anymore, but words of love, of life to me! Since a word of love is a true kiss of the mouth of God to the hearts of people; and therefore Salomon says: 'He, (the Lord) kisses me with the kiss of His mouth!'

[4] Now the after sentence fits quite well to it, where it says: 'since your love is lovelier than wine', or: Your love is more useful to me and all the people than wisdom. Since 'wine' always refers to wisdom and truth.

[5] When Salomon in the first imploring sentence asks for the word of love, and sighs to Me in the third person, he indicates that by pure wisdom he is still far away from Me; by the second person in the after sentence, where the reason of the request in the first sentence is expressed, Salomon indicates the already greater approach towards God by the way of love rather than along the way of pure wisdom. The kiss of love, however, for which Salomon has asked in his High Song, you all receive from Me right now, and as such, My dear Simon, the first verse of the High Song will be a little clearer to you than it was before!"

[6] Says Simon: "O Lord, now of course the second is also already clear to me, and I dare to explain it to me!"

[7] I said: "Do this and we will see how you have comprehended the second verse out of the light of the first one!"

[8] Says Simon: "This apparently means the following: Lord, if You kiss me with the kiss of Your mouth, if Your Word

becomes love, thus a true ointment of life, this ointment, this Your divine word of love, will become comprehensible to all mankind. Since quite often in normal speech one uses 'smell' instead of 'understand'. Often one says: 'Do you smell where this will end? or: 'He already smelt the roast or the ointment!'

[9] Now You, o Lord, are with us as in the first request by Salomon in the first verse! We have Your name, Your holy word of love, which is more precious than the pure wisdom of Salomon! We now have the spilled ointment before us, Your name, Your love, Your holy word of life, everything comprehensible before us.

[10] Now, the maiden who love You for this, are apparently also we, seen from the point of view of our limited insight and understanding! Since a maiden is a delightful being, is not completely without insight and mind, but at least generally seen there cannot be any comparison to a great manly wisdom. Therefore we are clearly the maiden, who love You, o Lord, above all, since Your word of love is comprehensible to us, for therefore a spilled ointment, in which delightful smell we wonderfully enjoying ourselves. Tell me, o Lord, if I according to the first verse have interpreted the second correctly!"

[11] I said: "Completely right and fundamentally truthful! With the quite incomprehensible seeming High Song it is the case, that it can be understood very easily if someone only has comprehended the first verse along the way of correspondence. Since you have interpreted the second verse absolutely right, try the third verse; perhaps you also will hit the nail on the head!"

[12] Says Simon: "O Lord, now I dare to take on the whole High Song! But the third verse is as clearly revealed before me, as this marvelous morning!

[13] 'Draw, o Lord, me behind You, and we will walk!' Who can otherwise move spiritually, as only love can?! And the result is, that those, who are with and by love are learned and drawn, understand and comprehend in one moment more, thereby truly walking in growth of recognition, than by dry and cold wisdom in many years. The simple person in the first

sentence is thus only morally one and appears in the after sentence as divided manifold, who are clearly we, and afterwards the whole of Israel and finally everything on earth called human.

[14] The King, the Everlasting, the Holy guides me and all of us to the of course most holy and brightest love and life chamber of His most Holy Father heart. And we are happy and are out of bounds cheerful about You and think about Your Father love a thousand times more than all of the dry and cold wisdom! Only in Your Love are we full of meekness and simple and thereby devoted in our hearts; we thereby are devoted and love You, o Lord, only completely in this our devotion.

[15] The wisdom morning, corresponding to the top of the mountain, is also marvelous and beautiful; but down here at the hospitable love-meal-tables in the large, holy chamber of Your most holy Father heart, the same morning of true life is of course also present. On top of the mountain we enjoyed, instructed in true recognition, the marvelous life light morning; but there were no tables laden with feeding and life strengthening delightful foods.

[16] The light of the deepest wisdom pleased us; but You already saw in perhaps some of us the germ of arrogance springing forth from the furrow in the little life garden of the heart, and said with the most fascinating love words: 'Children, down below in the depth of humility we have the same morning! If you climb down the short distance from the height of arrogance, which normally is the result of high, pure wisdom, to the depth of humility of love, you will enjoy the same light morning! And down below it is present just like here and you can enjoy it twice as much; since there is not only the same light, but also in love and humility the source of light and love of life! Down there are standing the full tables for strengthening, nourishment and maintenance of life in its entirety!'

[17] There, o Lord, You have drawn us by the true kiss of Your holy mouth, and we did not hesitated anymore, but followed You and love You now as truly devout in all love and humility!

Lord, did I comprehend and explained the matter correctly and has guessed the inner meaning of Your admonishing words on the mountain?”

3. SIMON EXPLAINS A FEW VERSES OF THE SONG OF SALOMON

[1] I said: “Quite excellent! If I Myself would have explained to you and all the others the verses of the High Song and in comparison My admonishing words on the mountain, I would have used exactly the same words. You therefore have explicated a good case to My fullest satisfaction. But since you have become the explainer of the High Song, you could try another few verses from the first chapter! Or is there somebody else among you who want to try this?”

[2] Say all: “Lord, we are still not capable, although it seems to us that we are up to it!”

[3] Says Simon: “O Lord, in this regard I’m fully confident. I suddenly understand this very well and certainly also correctly!”

[4] A further verse says: ‘I’m black, but quite lovely, you daughters of Jerusalem, like the hut of Kedar, like the carpets of Salomon.’ This translated to our natural tongue can mean nothing else than: ‘I, the Lord, now in the world with you blind and often haughty people, mostly not recognized and deeply despised by your high world, but in Myself I’m still full of the deepest meekness and gentleness, patience and love for you daughters of Jerusalem!’

[5] Who are the daughters of Jerusalem? They are haughtiness, pride, lust for power and avarice of the descendants of Abraham; these are the beautified daughters of Jerusalem, to whom, however, the despised, thus the black Lord before them, the first human of all humans, was still merciful and benevolent and is more lovelier and more loving than the from outside wretched looking hut of Kedar (Kai-darz), which, however, from the inside was abundantly equipped with all kind of treasures for distribution among the justified poor and suffering

and also lovelier than the most valuable carpets of Salomon, which outer surface was of a dark-gray, rough material, but the lower and inside was made from the most precious Indian silk, interweaved with the finest gold.

[6] It further says: ‘Look at me, how black I am (before you daughters of Jerusalem); since the sun (your worldly pride) has burned me (before your haughty worldly face)! My mother’s children are angry with me.’ Who else can be Your mother in You, o Lord, than Your everlasting wisdom, just as the Father in You is Your everlasting Love? Your mother is also equal to Your everlasting order, who’s angry children are filling with You, o Lord, the everlasting infinite space and by their order are angry about the great disorder of the children of Israel.

[7] Since this holy order ‘was placed as guardian of the vineyard’, which means: Your will united with all You powers of heaven, has given to mankind this order through laws, so that by it the vineyards, which are human societies, stay within the order of the heavens.

[8] ‘But my vineyard, which I had, I have not guarded!’ Which means: ‘My everlasting, divine, inaccessible height and depth I have placed outside the flood!’ of which Your very much accessible presence here is hopefully for everybody the most solid proof. You have left the highest and most inaccessible and brightest heaven, to appear here in the deepest humility, thus black before the children of this earth, and to guide the justified poor into Your chamber, the just hut of Kedar. O Lord, tell me, if I have interpreted also the next two verses as asked by You, correctly!

[9] I said: “Quite right; therefore give us also the explanation of the sixth verse added to the five!”

[10] Says Simon: “To You my fullest love and my innermost gratitude, that You, o Lord, found me young fellow worthy, to uncover through your mercy and love for those who love You, the deep secrets which since they have been written, not been uncovered by nobody until now. My soul rejoices about this mercy beyond measure. Nevertheless, there is no haughtiness in

it; to the contrary I'm getting increasingly more modest, the more I recognize and understand Your everything and my complete nothingness. But You, o Lord, knows it, that I always have something to do with good humor, and the delightful wine encourages me more so, and therefore with this required sixth verse I cannot otherwise, irrespective of its seriousness, to add a little humor to it!"

[11] I said: "Just speak as your heart and tongue is grown!"

[12] Continues Simon: "If Salomon or his soul filled with all wisdom, had the opportunity to be present in our midst, he surely would not have written down the sixth verse; since in the sixth verse Salomon says: 'Tell me, you, who my soul loves, where you are grazing, where you are resting at midday, so that I do not have to move to and fro between the herds of your learners!' Since then Salomon's and through him his people's soul would have found You pasturing Your sheep in the morning, midday, evening and also at midnight; thus always active and not only resting at midday!

[13] I mean, the everlasting midday of Your rest – which is this infinitive long period of time when You not like now were among the people, but have left them to Your learners who always became sillier and haughtier – is over now and a new and everlasting life morning has risen, and those who have recognized you, will surely not search for you to and fro among Your now quite stupid and sluggish becoming learners.

[14] What do You think, o Lord: did I at least have to some extend touched on the right meaning?"

[15] I said: "Completely, despite the humor, which you have added here quite befittingly! Since we also have seen now that also the High Song of Salomon can be revealed and you, Simon, yourself have taken on a totally different opinion, also your corrector Gaby should tell us something interesting; I actually want to know from his own mouth the reason why he so highly regarded the High Song of Salomon, without having understood it in the slightest way! Gaby, open therefore your mouth and tell us something!"

4. GABI ADMITS HIS FOLLY AND PRIDE

[1] Gaby gets up, bows low and then says with a very unsteady voice, which even made the otherwise very serious Romans smile a little: “O Lord and Master! I never have searched for glory; since this was never my case and therefore I also do not look for glory here and never wanted any glory in my whole life, and because I don’t want to look for glory, I rather say nothing and keep quiet! I’m already finished with my speech!”

[2] Says involuntary Simon: “O, what is this then? Otherwise you liked to chat a lot, always wanted to be a main speaker and did not really decline some attention?! Strange!”

[3] Says Gaby: “What I do, I do, and it does not need to concern you! It is easy to speak among people; but here is God and His angels present, and then no person’s voice should become too cheeky, but to keep quiet in all humility! My name is Gaby the quiet one and not Simon the cheeky!”

[4] Says Cyrenius smiling: “Aha, *hinc iliae lacrimae* (therefore those tears!)? See, see, the young man does not look for glory, however, he seems quite hurt because his companion Simon earned, o Lord, Your pleasure for the explanation of the High Song! Truly, I do not like this from Gaby at all!”

[5] Says even Jarah: “I also don’t like this! Since I find a lot of joy, if I notice how the love and mercy of the Lord wondrously begins to reveal itself in someone’s soul; but a false cowering of a soul is something offensive. Who is asked by the Lord to speak, but because of a false shyness declines and says that he does not look for any glory, lies to himself and to all the others, and to lie is something very offensive!”

[6] Says again Simon: “So get up and justify yourself properly, and give to the Lord an answer to His holy question!”

[7] Here Gaby gets up again and asks for excuse, that he opened his mouth in such a silly manner in front of the Lord before. He wants to answer now if it pleases the Lord.

[8] I said: “Now, so speak! Since I did not have taken back My question to you as invalid yet; to the contrary we all still wait

for a modest answer from you! Thus, speak, and tell us what you know!”

[9] Says Gaby: “Since the question was put to me concerning my love for the High Song of Salomon, despite me not understanding it, I will openly give the reason for such my love, although finally in all honesty I have to admit, that I did not had an actual reason for it, this means, I mean, a good reason, when speaking of a reason; since something stupid and actually bad can never be seen as a valid reason for any behavior, because something bad is pure sand which never can serve as a solid foundation for a house, spiritually or naturally speaking. Now, what was therefore the actual prime reason for my love about the High Song of Salomon? Nothing else than a secretly large stupidity and vanity only known to me!

[10] I wanted to be regarded as a wise and well learned man of the script, not only among my colleagues but also with all the other people, and therefore selected from the whole script precisely that as a hobby, of which I was convinced that from the whole crowd of scribes nobody was understanding it just as myself. But I was very smart and pretended to be clever, serious and wise.

[11] When people saw me reading the High Song with a pretended cheerful look, I was often asked if I really understood the inextricable mystic of the Song. My answer was very short: ‘which fool reads continuously what he impossibly could understand?! If I would not understand the mystic of the Song, would I also be the fool to read it, and would the reading touch my heart if I wouldn’t understand it just like you?!’ They pressurized me, they implored me, yes, I even was threatened that I at least should make my knowledge available to the high-priest. But to no avail; since I knew my way regarding making excuses of all kind, I could not be persuaded to disclose any of my secrets, which was easy to do, since I really didn’t have any.

[12] Only Simon, as my most intimate friend, knew, but only partially, what it was all about my Salomon-like wisdom. He often approached me and proved to me that I, with the High

Song of Salomon, was either fooling myself or for that matter the world. 'Because', he often said to me, 'with your otherwise limited knowledge and experience, will you understand the High Song since you have laboriously memorized it by heart?!' Still, I nevertheless tried to make him believe by saying to him that I have the highest predilection for those deepest, most unclear and most muddled mysteries and that I imagined something enormously big must lie behind it. He finally believed me; but he was greatly mistaken. Since by myself I was an enemy of Salomon's wisdom, through which he finally became an idolater.

[13] Now I did not want to deceive anyone any longer, but I also did not want to reveal myself unnecessarily to such an extent, as if I previously only tried to deceive the people to, frankly said, someday become a competent Pharisee, which was regarded by me as nothing small, until 3 days ago when giving us this goal completely, since the more clever and devious a Pharisee is, the greater his reputation is with the temple.

[14] I actually do not wanted to think about the whole stupidity anymore and wanted to let go of it very quietly; but since I have been asked by You, o Lord, to speak about this, now, I have in all truth spoke about it and everybody now knows how things were standing with me and where I stand now. In this case I was extremely willful, and there wasn't much what could be done with me; but know I'm in the perfect and best order again, recognize the only true light of all life and will never again try to deceive anybody.

[15] But if I have behaved improperly in the presence of the Lord, I first ask You, o Lord and Master, as well as all Your friends, great and small, from the deepest bottom of life, for forgiveness! Since through my first silence I do not wanted to harm anybody, but only to cover my old disgrace a little. But this didn't work in front of Your all-seeing eyes, and therefore I have showed me like I was, and how I am now. And with that I'm completely at the end of my speech and does not know anything further."

5. GABI'S PHARISAIC PRINCIPLES

[1] I said: "This was extremely good for you only, that you fully have expressed yourself; nevertheless everything, you still have to tell Me one thing very faithfully, but again, not for the sake of Me, but only on your behalf! See, when you were sworn in at the temple, didn't you at that stage believed in no God at all, because with all your senses you immediately began with deception, to become a fully fledged Pharisee with all malice possible? Didn't anybody tell you, that a Pharisee is a servant of God and priest following Aaron and never be a selfish and power-hungry swindler of people? How could you ever let such a fundamental evil sense sprout in your heart?"

[2] Is helping people, wherever possible, not already a lovely principle of life in itself, which already the old pagan sages regarded in high esteem and have observed? Did not once Socrates say: 'If you, mortal human, want to honor the gods in a worthy manner, then serve your brothers; since they are, just like you, the most delightful work of the gods! If you love the people, then you sacrifice to all the gods who are good, and the evil will not be able to punish you!' The Romans said: 'Live honorable, harm nobody and give to everybody what is his!' See, such was the value of the Romans, who were heathens; how could you, therefore, as a Jew, take up such hellish sense?"

[3] Couldn't you just at least a little think by yourself, that there must be a God, who does not want anything else than good and who could not have created man just for the short span of life here on earth, but must have created him for eternity?! See, about this you still have to give Me a strict true account and express yourself completely! And now speak!"

[4] Said Gaby: "God, Lord and Master since eternity, if I ever had the opportunity to hear only the hundredths part of what I have learned in these most noteworthy three days, I certainly would not have taken up such evil sense; but – *Exempla trahunt* (examples entices!), also discovered by the Romans – I had such examples and patterns before me, who were worse than worse!"

And these bad examples and patterns lived quite well at the same time, and always the better, the more they mastered the art, to blatantly deceive the people and keep them in the dark.

[5] Since they said: Nature – not God, who was nothing else than an old peoples poetry – has given the brighter human already from the cradle the direction, that he, if he really wants to live well, have to exploit above all the stupidity of the people; who does not understand this, stays a fool for his whole life and should remain a human work-animal equipped with some reason, and feed himself from thorns and thistles and lie on stubbles!

[6] As peoples teachers one should only be worried, to keep the common human work-animals in the thickest superstition! As long as this is affected, the actual spiritual people can live well; however, as soon the common people are shown the truth and given the light, the actual spiritual people had to pick up mattock, plough, spade and sickle themselves and with sweat in their faces had to eat the hard earned bread.

[7] The real human must strive for it, that he is regarded by the human work-animals at least as a half-god. If he reached this goal, he must lock up his light like an Egyptian grave and surround himself with all kind of false luster and deadening mist; then the human work-animals will soon start to worship him, and this even more so, if he from time to time shows them some kind of apparent usefulness. In short, he must be able to fundamentally, but nevertheless falsely, prove to the human work-animals, that it is to their incalculable advantage, if they are abused or even beaten to death by their supposed half-god!

[8] One should give them hard laws and place as sanction the sharpest temporary and most severest threatening eternal punishments upon them, and promise to the faithful follower of the laws, certainly no earthly advantages, but the more so greater everlasting advantages after death, and under such conditions one should be standing as a true human in front of the countless human work-animals! If his successors are able to keep the mob in the darkest night of superstition, thousands of

years would not be enough to enlighten them; however, if they are unable to do so, they, exposed as swindlers of the people, had to pitifully flee as far as possible.

[9] Moses and Aaron were such true people, who by their awakened mind and by their abundance of knowledge, soon discovered the weaknesses of the Israelite people, took over the leadership of the people as guides and by bringing prosperity, and through a finely thought of, but nevertheless extraordinary swindle, misled the people to such an extent, that they even today are still as stupid as they were nearly a thousand years ago at the foot of Sinai and will stay that way for still many thousand years to come. But basically this is still a relief for the people; since humans from the beginning are lazy beasts and must therefore be ruled with an iron scepter and must be whipped with rods to do good!

[10] Lord, what I revealed here is not just futile poetry of my imagination, but the full truth! This is the inner view of the divine revelation of every perfect Pharisee, which becomes even more valuable, the more incomprehensible it is. The High Song of Salomon fits this setup just perfectly; also the prophets, including Moses, are very useful! And this was also an additional reason, why I decided to go for the High Song.

[11] I am again at the end and believe, to have proven at great length that my earlier disposition could impossibly be different; since like the instructions, so are people, and also are their will and their actions! That I now look back on such really infernal instructions with the deepest disdain is self-explanatorily! But I also expect from You, o Lord, that You, according to Your Love and Wisdom, most leniently forgive me my thinking and actions as revealed here faithfully and truthfully!"

[12] I said: "How could I keep it from you, since you yourself have banned all these works of hell from yourself forever? Since for this very reason I asked you to rid yourself loudly in front of all of us from this, so that your heart could become completely free, and its most inner foundation of life can now belong to the fullest truth! Simultaneously I effected the goal

that all present here should hear from the mouth of reliable witnesses, what the Pharisees of today are really are, and why it was necessary that I Myself had to come into this world personally, so that all mankind does not perishes and is lost. But now you two, balance yourself again completely, and you Simon should now express your most inner opinion about Me to us all!”

6. SIMON’S OPINION ABOUT THE LORD

[1] Says Simon: “O Lord, with that I will be finishing rather quickly and easily! You are the Son out of God in the spirit and are before us God and human at the same time, and out of Yourself You are also the only in heaven as on this earth. In the whole of infinity nobody is equal to You! An angel never submits to the will of a person; but if You give to him only the slightest sign, he fulfills in a nearly inconceivable quickest moment Your will. What You want, happens inevitably; any word spoken by You is already a completed action!

[2] Your eye sees in one moment through all spiritual and material creation. The most secret thoughts of angels are as clear to You as if You have thought them Yourself, and what we poor, mortal people might think so deeply in us, You see more clear as we can see this marvelous bright sun. You know about everything what the sea holds secret at its deepest bottom, You know the number of the sand in the sea, those of the stars, and what they contain and carry, and the number of the grass on earth, the herbs, the brushes, the trees and the spirits in the whole, infinitive space is more known to You than the number one to me! If I not only believe this most lifelike, but also most vividly know this, it will not be difficult to say: Lord, this is my most inner opinion about You, as far as I have to get to know You during the past three days! I wouldn’t know to say anything else!”

[3] I said: “But including today you are already more than three days with Me! Why do you only speak of three days?”

[4] Says Simon: “Lord, why should I be concerned about the three material days?! I only count the three spiritual recognition days; those are firstly the true recognition of matter, secondly the recognition of the being of souls and thirdly the recognition of the pure spiritual. These are the true three days of life, which we are with You!”

[5] I said: “Ah, this is of course something completely different! With that I’m quite content with you; since regarding correspondence you are quite familiar with, but not completely with the recognition of your inner self! And as such is also the opinion about Me, which you have taken from your innermost; there still sits something of which you have to rid yourself! Indeed, it is only a smallest granule of a temporary doubt about Me, and see, this granule must be removed from you, otherwise in time it will start to germinate and can grow to a forest full of the darkest doubts in your heart, which would be quite difficult to exterminate! Just look quite deep into your heart, and you will find the evil granule of doubt!”

[6] Simon looks a little confused at Me and also at the other people at the table, thinks about himself and says after a while: “Lord, truly, I can search wherever I want, I still find so speak nothing! Since all still so quietly rising doubts about You, are discarded in one moment, and there can be no one left!”

[7] I said: “And still, and still – just think and you will find it!”

[8] Says Simon: “Lord, You make me fear myself! Should I very secretly be a monster? I can do and think whatever I want. I still find not nearly anything, what You, o Lord, want from me. Wherein and in which manner could I still have a doubt or at least a reason for it?”

[9] I said: “But friend Simon, look at Me! Do I really seriously look so penal-greedy and revengeful, that you are afraid to openly confess, what so to speak already lies on your tongue?”

[10] Upon these My words Simon got a fright and says: “But Lord! Must also this little thing, which loud expression I regarded as inappropriate, be expressed loudly?”

[11] Man can think by himself quite a few things; yes, he does

not really think this by himself purposefully! The thought comes from somewhere breathed into my heart and sometimes stays for a while; finally it is blown away and one nearly does not recall it ever again. And as such also this little my little doubt thought came from somewhere flown into my heart, and I thought it, but discarded it immediately again, because I carry thousands of the heaviest proofs against it in my head and heart. In addition I found the loud mentioning of this thought as somewhat improper. If You, o Lord, insists on it, I'm pleased to speak about it. – Dear, great friends of the Lord, take it, as I already have totally discarded it!

[12] However, this is the thought: From the time I'm here, I all the time see the extremely charming and most beautiful maiden at the side of the Lord, and therefore, but truly like by itself, the of course ridiculous thought forced itself upon me, if the Lord could also be sexually in love, at least for as long He walks on this earth in the flesh! But if so, what would happen then to His absolutely pure spirituality? God can purely love all His creatures. However, if He also in particular could love an exceedingly beautiful girl on this earth in a sexual manner, to affirm or to deny this was for my intelligence a little difficult, although I called in my soul to myself: 'with You every love can only be in the highest degree pure, also one what we would call among us humans as completely impure!'

[13] Lord, there it is, what You wanted from me! But now I'm finished with all granules and germs, and You, o Lord, make from it what You want! Or does Your divine all-seeing eye still sees something else inside me? Should there be something else which I cannot see, then make me mercifully attentive to it, and I will immediately without any fear, come forward with it!"

7. SIMON'S IDEA ABOUT THE LORD AS A MALE HUMAN BEING

[1] I said: "Now you are pure, and there is nothing in you, which could ever disconcert you in your faith in Me; but now I want to show you and also all of you, what most dense doubt forest could have grown in you, if you did not rid yourself of this little doubt granule. In time you simply would have started to philosophy as follows:

[2] What would become thereof, if I transgressed with a maiden and a fruit would arise thereupon in the lap of the maiden? If it would be a male, would it also be a God? And if it was a female, what then? Would it weaken the Law of Moses if I would have transgressed? Would it not make My God-person incapable to keep the divine spirit? Or would I, regarding My person, be capable of such an act or not? But how could I animate such an act in people, if I Myself are unable of it?

[3] If this deed is a sin in the flesh and weakens soul and spirit, why did I have placed this sinful act in man's flesh and soul to reproduce? Could I not have arranged the reproduction to take place in a purer manner?! But if this act of reproduction out of the order of God is the only right and possible one, a God must be able to do it just as a person! Why is this act for the people a sin and for God not; or can God under certain circumstances sin against His own order? How can God be the purest love, if He becomes guilty of a sinful human weakness?!

[4] God as God can impossibly sin against His own order! But if He has taken up the nature of man, is his flesh able to sin or not! Must also He fight against all attacks of the flesh? If He has them, who allows it to come over Him? Is there still another higher and older God, who is steadying this young and to-be-God by all kind of heavy tests and makes Him reborn in the spirit? If this young God now sins like a man, could He also be rejected as man?

[5] Could the old Egyptians not be right regarding their genealogy for the main gods? Uranus produced with Gea,

Cronos (Saturn, time), who all the time destroys his works. Zeus, as the will of Cronos, is saved by love, grows up in secrecy and becomes exceedingly powerful. The power of Zeus places Uranus and Cronos in everlasting retirement rules absolutely alone and creates the people on earth, for which he is tormented a lot by all kinds of human weaknesses, according to the destiny of the terrible, unfathomable Fate as the primordial oldest God. The Fate seems to be the unknown great God; but now, sort of tired of ruling, he invisibly and unknown has placed a God-spark in a pure maiden and has now become youthful and by this son created himself a successor, and it is Him standing now in front of us and makes His first attempts to rule!

[6] I could still tell you a great number of such offshoots, of which such a doubt forest consists, and in which other undergrowth and weed it can generate. But since the seed has been destroyed in you, you are now clean, and there can be no talk of any further blossoming of the weed; and since you have been completely cleaned, you are suitable to become one of My first disciples.

[7] By the way you will now understand, how and why this little maiden with all her love clings on to Me. Since as much as this little maiden loves Me, nobody of you loves Me; since your love is more an amazement about My wisdom and about My for you incomprehensible miracles. But this little maiden loves Me completely purely for sake of Myself, since she knows who is residing in Me. And this is worth more than to admire Me as God, since it must be clear to everyone, that with God all things are possible. This is also good, but the other is better.

[8] What would you prefer more: if people love you, because you are a person, or only because you are a wise person and knowledgeable in all kind of arts? The first love originates from life and seizes again life; the second, however, originates from the sense of art and only seizes the art and science of him, who possesses it. Tell Me now, which love do you regard as higher?"

[9] Says Simon: "Obviously the first! Since who loves me

already as a person, will also love me even more so as a wise man and artist; but who loves me because he is of the opinion that I'm a wise man and an artist, will soon be finished with this love, if he learns that I'm not wise and not be an artist! Therefore is this purest love for You, o Lord, of this little maiden, truly an example love and by far exceeds all of us in a high degree!

[10] Of course, certainly does a maiden loves a man for the sake of himself easier and more natural than one man another man; if, however, a man with his mind and heart regards deeply the value of a person, a brother, he will, feeling and recognizing his own value, also respect and love his fellowman irrespective his properties. And if in future he discovers some secret, quite venerating properties of him, his love surely will intensify! – O Lord! Every word and teaching of Yours is great and elated and in all eternity of eternities the truth!”

8. BECOMING ONE WITH GOD

[1] (Simon:) “I can see now that You, O Lord, are revealing Yourself to the people completely and nowhere You are holding back or keep any secrets like the old Prophets have done, who revealed You to the people only under cover of the thickest veil and nearly showed only the hemline of Your dress to the mortals. Indeed, they founded a religion and a church; but what religion and church was this? Religion was a nearly invisible star, sending a most sparing ray of hope from somewhere of infinite space to earth covered in the thickest night, and the church, a building of hard rocks, a temple, surrounded by many labyrinths and gloomy forecourts, which the people could enter, but never the innermost of the temple, where all the great secrets of life are lying revealed on the golden tables.

[2] However here, not only the innermost of the temple is made completely accessible to the people, but also God, the everlasting Inaccessible, totally reveals Himself personally to the people, as He was, is and will be forever. Therefore it is also

necessary, to accept God not only partially, but entirely with body, soul and spirit, by the exclusive sole love for Him. Such obligingness like this of the Creator towards the created, therefore also this from the created towards the Creator, must finally result in the full identification between the creative primordial Being and the created after-being.

[3] God becomes one with us, and we become one with Him, without the slightest limitation of our personal individuality and the most perfect freedom of will! Since without the most perfect identification of the created with the Creator, a most perfect freedom of will is unthinkable, because only the will of the Creator can be present in the most perfect unlimitedness and the will of the created only then, if it has perfectly become one with the will of the Creator.

[4] If we want what the Lord wants, our will is perfectly free, because also the Lord's will is perfectly free; but if we does not want this or only partially, we are the most wretched slaves of our own blindness. Only in God can we become perfectly free; except for God there exists only judgment and death!

[5] Lord, You see that I do not fear to speak; and I believe that also this time I have hit the nail on the head! However, add Your almighty blessing to it, that this most marvelous wheat grain, which You Yourself, o holiest Father, have planted from Your everlasting heaven here on this unfortunately very meager earth, in the earth of our still stupid hearts, so that it can produce thousandfold fruits! O holiest Father, become one with us, Your creatures, with Your still poor children, so that we one day, resembling You, also can become one with You!" – Here Simon, completely captivated, breaks out in tears.

[6] But I get up and say to Simon: "Come to Me, you My dearest brother, and hug in Me not Your Creator, but your Brother, so that you are the first one to become one with Me!"

[7] Says Simon quite contritely: "O You too holy Father! This mercy the sinful Simon is not worthy of forever!" And he cries again. In return, however, I go to him and press him with a repeated brother's greet to My heart.

[8] After a while, when Simon recovered from his captivity and I reassuringly influenced his heart, Simon said: “My Lord and My God! What did I do, that You suddenly are so lenient and merciful towards me? See, I’m a sinful person; since my flesh is quite loose. The beautiful and attractive maiden leave a mighty impression on me and from time to time quite indecent thoughts are forcing themselves upon me. And quite often I willingly engage with a kind of lust and joy in these thoughts, although not in deed because of a lack of opportunity, but still in my heart, which behaves quite affirmative during such estrous stages.

[9] But then also quite bright moments appear in me and I have reasonable views and considerations about this point; but to what use? If I again see a beautiful maiden, all the brighter moments, all the reasonable views and considerations are gone in an instant, and the old scapegoat, armed with all its indecent intentions, is back in its place. Of course, I do nothing; but this doing-nothing is nevertheless not a true doing-nothing, but simply a doing which is prevented by a bad opportunity. The fear for temporary punishment and disgrace is preventing one thereof, but not so the own free will, who at such opportunities contains a lot of desire, and at a good opportunity surely will not reveal any negation! I know my loose flesh unfortunately just too well and therefore are a sinful person and not worthy of such a great mercy from You.”

9. PURPOSE AND NATURE OF THE SENSES

[1] I said: “Friend and brother, why are you concerned about the flesh and what happens in it?! If I had not implanted such property in the flesh, would ever a man take a wife and awaken a living fruit in her?!”

[2] If I had not put the desire into the stomach to eat, would ever someone consume any food? In what other manner could nature-specific-spirits enter the blood and other fluids of the body, from there into the nerve-ether and, in such manner

purified, become soul-substance? Through My wills power, certainly, among the primitive order; but what would then become of the everlasting continuance ability? By no other means than by a hard, continuing judgment; but what would then become of the independence and future spiritual freedom of life?!

[3] See, if just one point in My once arranged order is moved, and an all independent life with the fullest freedom becomes forever an impossibility. Have I not given the eyes the ability to see and the ears the ability to hear, the tongue the ability to speak and to taste and the nose the ability to smell?!

[4] Are you therefore a sinner because from time to time you are getting hungry and thirsty? Do you sin, if you are seeing, hearing, tasting and smelling? All these senses are given to you to perceive the form of things, to listen to the wise meaning of speeches and to perceive good and bad and harmful spirits of the still unfermented and raw matter!

[5] Of course, you can also sin with the eyes, ears, nose, the palate and the tongue, if you do not use these senses according to order, if you only direct your eyes into the direction, where the flesh is given an account, if you with preferably and desirously only listens to sacrileges, invective and scurrilous speeches, if you only smell stinking things for pleasure, which pollutes the flesh and make it ill and incapable to work. You are also sinning with the palate and the tongue, if you do not curtail the too big lasciviousness for the most expensive delicacies; since why should your palate be tickled with the most expensive things and delicacies, while alongside you many poor must perish because of hunger and thirst?! If you are hungry and thirsty, satisfy yourself with simple and freshly prepared food; but if you are engaging in gluttony and overindulgence, you are clearly sinning against all order of God.

[6] Now see, all this is not the case with you; to the contrary, you already have achieved some quite glorious victories over your flesh by yourself! You also have been moderately in all things and acted soberly in your desires. What was more or less

evil in you, consisted in your disbelief regarding the scriptures, which you earlier could not understand; but your disbelief was passable, while the disbelief of Gaby was of a real Pharisee-like, impassable nature. You, however, did not reject the scriptures; you only wanted light and illumination and therefore also studied all Egyptian and Greek world wises. But it nevertheless did not give you light; outwardly you stayed a Pharisee, but according to the inner you were always a diligent researcher for the truth. And since I knew this, I have awakened you, and have opened for you as well as all the others, the gates to the clearest truth.

[7] Now you can never get into the night again and therefore you should become a promoter for My kingdom of the spirit on this earth! Through you the heathens in Persia should get a lot of light! Now eat and drink again; since you are still hungry and thirsty and you have eaten only half of your fish and your mug is not empty yet! Therefore just help yourself, My young brother Simon!”

[8] Simon is still touched to tears, sits and eats bit by bit his fish with bread and wine.

10. THE NATURE OF THE ANGELS. HEART AND MEMORY.

[1] Also the other guests still help themselves, and especially again Raphael, which gives Cornelius finally a reason to make a somewhat laconic remark, which he so to speak whispers to the Romans sitting alongside him. These Romans were Faustus and Julius, and the remark of Cornelius was as follows: “To people of flesh and blood these most well prepared fishes are tasting quite good, and they can eat a great number of them; but the spirit Raphael, who does not have any flesh and blood, could measure up to the giant Hercules and the Philistine Goliath! Strange, how such a spirit can eat so much! He already consumes the twelfth fish, and for a spirit this is truly miraculously quite a lot! I have not eaten one fish, while the

angel in the same time has eaten twelve! No, this is too much! I believe he could eat another twelve!”

[2] Says the angel: “Not only twelve, but ten times hundred-thousand times twelve in one moment, even if all of them would be large wales, like the one in whose belly the prophet Jonas took up some a little uncomfortable accommodation for three full days!

[3] I do not need the fish for food, but certainly for the forming of this nature-spiritual ether, from which I according to the will of the Lord must form and temporarily maintain this visible body, which, although spirit, does not have a shortages of flesh and blood. Now Look, are these no veins and this no flesh?!

[4] That it is in my from the Lord received power, to dissolve this body in an instant and to pull it together again, lies in my until now highest possible spiritual completion of life; but I’m not only able to dissolve this my body with my wills power in an instant, but also yours and in the same time span also the whole earth.

[5] However, does your body not consist of flesh and blood, because I could dissolve it in an instant?! Or does the earth not consists of the most firm matter and of water, air and a countless number of primordial materials, if I also, if warranted by the Lord, could dissolve it in its primordial specific particles within an unthinkable shortest instant, so that its volume to your eyes, even if they would be something material, would appear as absolutely nothing?!

[6] Therefore, friends, think, think, before letting flow a word over your lips, so that you as disciples of the Lord never speak any nonsense, with which you truly do not honor your Master! You now already have seen, heard and experienced quite something; but about the inner spiritual greatness and might of a, say angel spirit, not even mentioning the everlasting spirit of God, you certainly do not have the slightest idea! But still you are able to make some sarcastic remarks about that, what an angel requires for its temporary, pseudo bodily preservation?!

[7] Do you really think that you could endure my true

primordial light form, if I would show myself to you?! See, the fire of the light of my primordial being is powerful enough, to destroy a countless number of primordial central suns, not mentioning you and this whole earth! So that this does not happen by my presence, I must form this pseudo body according to the almighty will of the Lord and cover my actual being to such an extent, that every disturbance of the order in the judgment of matter is avoided. Nevertheless, the matter must be prepared by my inner life fire, to be able to serve it as a protective shell! And therefore I must necessarily take in more material food than any of you.

[8] You did not know this and couldn't know this; however, you should have known, that someone like me has not been called by the Lord in this appearance, to be a glutton or joker or a quick-magician to your annoyance, but to be useful to you in many aspects, and to give you tangible proof of the presence of the angels of God and their power! But if you understand this, how can you make sarcastic remarks about my eating habits?"

[9] Says Cornelius: "Dear, most marvelous messenger of the Lord from heaven, do not be angry with me; since you can see, spiritually we are not more than nearly newborn children in the cradle and more a dream-life than any already completed self-consciousness! In future eat as much as you like; no one of us will ever again dare, to have even the slightest thought about it, not mentioning speaking about it. At the same time we hereby thank you for the extraordinary lesson which you, in your justified annoyance, has given us regarding our pertinacious stupidity. Since we now know about the 'why', we certainly will not make a skew judgment about the 'therefore'! But if the 'why' is foreign to us, how should we know about the 'therefore'? Therefore, again our special gratitude for your great and important lesson!"

[10] Says Raphael: "Gratitude belongs only to the Lord, who is your as well as our Father in eternity! Let this lesson spill over to all other experiences and appearances in life, and soon you will see us angels standing as worthy brothers at your side! You

should not criticize or laugh at anything, except at lies and deception! Since the liar should always stand in disgrace and the deceiver be exposed, so that he tastes the fruit of lies and deception!

[11] At any other opportunity you should gently teach the erring people. If they take note afterwards, it is fine and good; if they are not taking note, you then can pull the wires more taut! If this is also to no avail, lock such willful into a correctional facility and let them fast and if necessary punish with rods; since with a right and good punishment, the rod should not be absent! Also we, as your secret educators, make use of it with the people who are willful and very stubborn. Keep also this lesson and do it where necessary, and you will walk among people; otherwise among all kind of wild animals, who are stuck in human larvae!”

[12] Says Cyrenius: “Lord, did the angel take this out of himself – or did he took everything from You?”

[13] I said: “My friend, your memory has again become a little short! Didn’t I, a few days ago, has explained carefully to you, what the angels are, and how they think, want and act, and now you again ask about it! If they are only animated forms by Me, what self-like do they have? What thought can they think for themselves, since they are only an extension of My will and a collection vessel of My thoughts and My ideas and intentions?

[14] If they should think, want and act independently, they first had to dine like you at the children’s table and bless this earth in your flesh! From this it is clear like daylight, that this, what the angel Raphael now has told you, is My word, My speech and My will, which you have to observe, just as if I Myself had spoken directly to you.

[15] You must take My words deeper at heart, then they will not become so easily unfaithful to your memory; since everything what the heart has accepted in a living manner, stays most firm also in memory, and you can access it quite easily at a suitable opportunity. But if you only want to memorize what I have told you, you will largely forget about it within one year at least a

hundred times; since when you are older, the memory is not as juicy as in the youth. However, already the youth forgets quite easily what they have learned, not mentioning older people. But what the heart has seized has entered life and stays forever!

[16] I say to you, whatever you have absorbed into memory in this world, not one iota will remain in the beyond; therefore all dry world scholars appear in the beyond like deaf, blind and mute, does not know anything and cannot recall anything. Not seldom they arrive in the beyond bare of any concept, like a baby born into this world from the mother's womb. They first have to learn and experience everything from the first elements, otherwise they would stay deaf, blind and mute into eternity and would have nothing than a vague feeling of being, however, without feeling that it is them who already were on earth. All this must foremost be taught to them bit by bit in the most sensual manner.

[17] Where there is darkness in the heart of a person, also the whole person is dark; but where there is light and brightness, the whole person is illuminated, and he can never become dark again! Therefore, take immediately to heart what you hear, and soon there will be light in you!

[18] If all of you have understood that and absorbed it into your hearts, let us prepare for something else! What soon will arrive, will make you think a lot; but you also will learn a great deal from it and when the times comes, make the best use from it.”

11. THE PEOPLE OF ABYSSINIA AND NUBIA

[1] (The Lord:) “Most of you are familiar, at least according to legend, with the old-famous Egyptian's Land.

[2] Behind the great waterfalls of the Nile lies a very fertile and large mountain land, and has the name hAbi ie sin (this is Son of hAbi). This hAbi is a descendent of Cain and not Noah; these highlands, like also other counties of the earth, were spared by the great flood during the times of Noah.

[3] The son of this hAbi was, like Nimrod, a mighty hunter. He

invented the club and the bow, and all animals, never mind how tearing, fierce and wild, already from far away fled from him; since he was a giant. His voice made rocks shake, and with his mighty club he smashed rocks, and with his bow he shot ten pound arrows over a distance of a thousand steps; and at whatever he aimed, he surely hit and made it his prey.

[4] Simultaneously being a master of all the animals, also all his weaker brothers and sisters obeyed him. He was very serious, but never cruel towards the people, yes, not even hard: but what he instructed had to be executed.

[5] He believed in a far away, almighty God, who originally made all things. But this God has uncountable many and exceedingly mighty servants, visible and invisible. Some had to rule over sun, moon and all the stars, some over the earth, some over the water, some over the fire and so forth, some over the grass, over the trees, some over the waters above and in the earth, some over metals, some over the birds in the air, some over all the animals in the water and some over all the animals walking and creeping on earth.

[6] These invisible servants and often visible servants had to be highly honored by the mortal people, by strictly obeying and following the laws which they from time to time give to the people. They always punish disobedience in a most severe manner by all kinds of catastrophes which they send over the disobedient people, which do not respect them, does not follow their laws and also behave in an unfriendly manner among each other.

[7] In short, this son of hAbi was the first ruler of this ancient little nation and at the same time the first priest, who taught them the scanty concepts of God and other spiritual beings, and was in line the sixth descendent of Cain and the seventh of Adam.

[8] He taught them to get to know the tame animals, and to use them in their households and was therefore the first founder of a shepherd's colony and also taught them how to use some fruits as food, and to grow, maintain and ennoble them in a garden; he

also taught them to build huts from rocks, palms and clay and use it as a save residence.

[9] He himself cleaned the whole, large country from tearing, wild beasts. Already his equally gigantically mighty sons reaped the blessing from the restless efforts of their powerful father. During the course of a few hundred years, this black skin little nation grew to a large and mighty nation and had good customs and a quite effective governmental arrangement, even cleverer and better than Egypt itself under the first head shepherd (pharaohs).

[10] However, this rather happy nation blockaded all possible entrances, that even the foreign wild animals found it almost impossible to visit and cause harm to the rich herds of this wide extended large country, which was five times the size of the Promised Land. Because of that reason, until this hour no foreign enemy penetrated the green fields of this country, although the nation has expanded far beyond the old borders. Also the borders of the newly occupied lands were to such an extent blockaded by this nation, that it was not that easy for any enemy to penetrate the boundaries of such lands.

[11] Towards Egypt, where the last and quite coarse feet of the Komrahai Mountains start, they have the only access road. It is a very terribly narrow pass, which after four hours walking through many deceiving windings and mainly underground, ends in the most upper part of Egypt and leads through a very narrow cave, which exit was only found, during the times of Moses, by the natives, who actually were fugitives and as great state criminals fled the feared punishments. When pursued, they fled into a hole in the rocks to hide. When they advanced for about five-hundred steps inside the cave, armed with bows and arrows, they discovered daylight on the opposite side and ran towards it; they soon reached it and were very happy getting away from their pursuers. On the other side, reaching a never seen open land, they closed off the exit with rocks, so that it would not be possible for their pursuers to ever reach this wide, beautiful, free land.

[12] The number of fugitives counting 70 heads, among them 36 men and 34 women; the one not having a wife, they made him the leader because he was the most experienced; and one was still too young to have a wife and was therefore chosen as a servant for the leader.

[13] The fugitives lived in this land for a year and a half. However, they were not able to master the cleaning of the area, although spending most of their time hunting tearing beasts. After expiration of the aforesaid time, they moved along the Nile northward and after a few weeks reached the Cataracts, which, from Egypt seen, are called the second. There they encountered many troubles and a lot of work to make any progress.

[14] On the right shore of the Nile they would have made easier progress, but they were on the left shore, and there the area is very cleft and does not have a shortages of all kinds of animals, which are not quite friendly towards people. Since the difficulties of the way forward did not ended, they wanted to return to the earlier land, when a large herd of cattle and sheep followed them also to the north. This appearance made them believe that their pursuers had tracked them down. They therefore moved onwards as fast as possible and after a troublesome day's travel they finally reached a beautiful, large and exceedingly fertile land.

[15] There were an abundance of dates and figs, and there were large herds of sheep and cattle which moved around and grazed completely without owners. But those herds which forced our black people society to move forward, was lost in the gulches of the cataracts and did not followed them anymore, which pleased our society a great deal, since they thereby believed that the supposed pursuers did not follow them anymore.

[16] In this new land the society searched for the best place to live, fortified it and settled there. It was a beautiful, smooth hill alongside the Nile and covered with dates, figs and beautiful palms; except for a few monkeys there was no trace of any tearing beasts to be found.

[17] Here those people multiplied and within a few hundred years developed into a considerable nation, which seized all of the free herds and build huts and even villages and lived quite well. But all had the faith, the ethics and habits which the son of hAbi had introduced.

[18] This large, once very beautiful and fertile land the black inhabitants called with the name 'Noua Bia', which translated means 'New Dwelling'.

[19] In time this nation also made its acquaintance with the Egyptians, which later made every effort to subjugate these first black people, in which they, however, not succeeded altogether. These were also the first completely black people which the Egyptians became to see.

[20] In the beginning the Egyptians regarded these people as big apes; only after they discovered that these people spoke a language close to their own, they started to regard them as true people, bought cattle and sheep from them, and in return these black people learned all kind of arts and sciences from the Egyptians, which they could use quite well, especially regarding the preparation of metals, of which they until now had no knowledge.

[21] With these people their old religion and all their old customs and habits which they took over from the son of the hAbi, remained until today.

[22] In this year a seer has risen among the people and has revealed to his brothers and sisters an extraordinary vision, which he had seven consecutive times. He described to them the way he had to go, to reach the place where He could be found, who would teach the people the truth and the great unknown God.

[23] And see, this seer from Noua Bia will arrive with quite a considerable society before midday here in the area of Caesarea Philippi; we therefore will send a messenger to them, so that he can bring them here! They have come on many camels and have brought many treasures and will, what they are consuming here, pay with gold and precious stones.

[24] You, Marcus, see to it that these Nubians are looked after quite well! Because when you yesterday evening ask Me to stay for another day, I adhered to your request, otherwise I and My disciples would have left already this morning before sunrise to meet the caravan who are searching for Me. I, however, stayed and this stay will provide a lot of work for your house: nevertheless, you will be paid well.”

12. THE LORD SENDS A MESSENGER TO THE NUBIAN CARAVAN

[1] Marcus asks Me with an exceeding joyous face: “Lord, You Omniscient! How many persons are in the caravan?”

[2] I said: “It consists of exactly 70 heads, amongst them, just like their fugitive ancestors, 34 women and 36 men. The one without a wife is the seer, and the second without a wife is his servant!

[3] See, this is the way these blacks became fugitives nearly a thousand years ago, namely on the grounds of a renewal of the law, which of course during the times of Moses was not what it was before the Great flood! The old leader who became a fugitive, wanted to revive the old customs and habits; nevertheless, he only met a lot of enemies, who started to pursue him and his followers in a quite despicable manner, so that finally he had no option than to flee the blind, fanatical superiority of his many enemies.

[4] The escape was therefore a prophetic portent for the reception of a higher light and indicated, during the times of Moses, also to the better descendants of Cain, that during this time also for them a light of redemption will rise. These blacks will not reach the old well of Jacob like the children of Abraham, but nevertheless, they will still drink from the marvelous water, if they are thirsty for it.

[5] And now let’s choose a messenger, who masters the upper Egyptian tongue! In the camp of Julius is a spokesman; call him to Me, so that I can instruct him how he can recognize the

leader immediately, and what he has to tell him!”

[6] Julius himself got up immediately and hurried to the camp, called the spokesman and brought him to Me.

[7] When this arch Roman came to Me, he said: “Son of the most highest and most elated Zeus! What is it that You instruct me to do? I am in the highest degree unworthy, to receive an order from You – the Son of the highest God only gives orders to under gods, those to the princes of the earth, those to the senior most generals, those to their seniors and captains, and only those to their slaves, which we have the honor to be, but You, most Highest, want to make an exception here, and therefore I ask You for Your holy instructions!”

[8] I said: “Very good, very good, My dear friend! You are still an arch Roman, but nevertheless faithful and honest to your faith and your status. You have served for some time in Egypt, have learned to understand and speak the old Egyptian language, and now you should be messenger for Me to the area of Caesarea Philippi. You are a good rider and by horse you will soon be at the right place.

[9] In the vicinity of the burned down town you will meet a caravan consisting of seventy black people; in front, riding on two white covered camels, are the leader on the right and his servant on the left. The leader will already greet you from a far distance. He is dressed completely in white clothes; but his face you will find coal black. Likewise his hands and feet; but in his heart it looks much brighter than the skin of his body. Say to him: ‘You have reached the goal of your efforts; follow me! Within a few moments you will be standing in front of the face of Him, whom you have searched for after your seventh vision!’

[10] Such say to him with the old Egyptian tongue, which you can speak rather well! Go now, saddle your horse and go quickly; where the main roads cross, you will meet with him!”

[11] When the spokesman heard such from Me, he bowed deeply and said: “A Roman veteran never bows except before the gods; but You alone are worthy of all admiration and all worshipping! And now I will carry out Your instructions!”

[12] The already gray warrior hurries away, was quickly in full armament on his Arabian horse and galloped like an arrow to the indicated place, and a dust cloud in the distance was so to speak a sure sign, that the large caravan was approaching the place. Our messenger was within a few moments at the indicated place and still waited for a quarter of an hour for the full arrival of the large caravan. We could see them when looking around the corner for the house; since to the crossing it was only a weak half an hour walking away.

[13] When the leader arrived at the to the teeth armed spokesman, he asked him according to Roman war custom, where he was heading and what determined him in his native country to carry out such trip.

[14] The leader came to a halt, looked the Roman firmly into the eyes and said in a very serious sounding voice: "Roman! Who asked you to expect me here? Today we already came from the great sea and crossed through steppes and forests. From Alexandria ships carried us over the wide sea; only birds could see us from Egypt to here! You are the first person whom we have met during the complete trip; how could you know that we would arrive? Who revealed our arrival to you? Are you a seer; since you should know, there exists a foremost and most high God-being above all your gods and above all people, irrespective of which skin color they are!

[15] Seven times I had the same vision; in this vision I always saw this area in an indescribable light. A little group of people of white and brown skin color was already standing in this great light and shone themselves like sons. But among these light people, there was standing one who shone brighter than a hundred-thousand suns! From Him all light originated; yes, it gave me the feeling, as if the whole of infinity was full of His most immeasurable light! But irrespective of His indescribable bright light, it nevertheless caused no pain, like with us the much weaker light of the sun.

[16] At the end of the always same vision I always heard the clear words: 'Go there, you black one, there also your night will

become illuminated!’ Such I told to all my black brothers and sisters, and we decided to undertake this trip from Nouabia, and are now on our way for already three month.

[17] I knew quite well to where we had to travel: since my spirit, who accompanied me already for seven years, had told me, that the place which I saw in my vision, was lying in Asia along the coast of the great sea. From the sea I immediately recognized it, which I have seen seven times in my vision. When we were at the right place, we went on land. Immediately a road was showing, on which we travelled to here, and here you are meeting us! O tell me, who told you about us? O speak! I anticipate greatness!”

[18] Said the Roman: “You have reached the destination of your laborious travels! Within a few moments you will be standing in front of the face of Him, whom you have searched for, after seeing Him seven times in your vision!”

[19] The leader immediately instructed all to follow the Roman; since he was clearly a messenger of Him, whom they were searching for.

[20] The Roman immediately led the way and the whole caravan followed him.

13. THE LORD SPEAKS WITH THE LEADER OF THE NUBIANS

[1] The ride went smoothly and our spokesman brought the whole caravan to us, who were still sitting blithesome at the tables.

[2] When My Jarah saw the pitch black faces with nearly blood red lips and markedly white eyes, she was frightened and said: “O Lord, these beings wouldn’t harm us? They really have a dreadfully black appearance! I already have seen Moors, but not so dreadfully black like these! Just look at the strong set of teeth! Truly, Lord, if I wouldn’t be with You, I would begin to be terribly afraid! To love such a black person, would really be a challenge for a tender feeling heart of a girl!”

[3] I said: “Alright, My dearest daughter, but be clever, My little child! Who would be afraid of a color? Now you have been a little childish, but this doesn’t matter! Just pay proper attention to everything; because there will be important issues negotiated!”

[4] Says Jarah: “However, about that I most likely will not understand a great deal; since regarding the old Egyptian tongue it is night with me, and these blacks cannot speak any other language!”

[5] I said: “Everything will be translated; be therefore calm, do not speak, but listen!”

[6] Upon this Jarah is quiet and I immediately let the leader and seer come to Me and ask him, what made him and his companions travel so far. I of course knew this from the roots; but I nevertheless had to ask him to provide him with the opportunity to express himself and reveal his request.

[7] Upon My question, which I put to him in the Hebrew tongue, the leader, also in our language, gave the following answer: “For me nameless, most elated person on this earth, forgive me poor, weak half-person, if I dare to make the shy remark, that I recognize in you the very same person, which I have seen four month ago in my seven always similar visions in an indescribable brightest light, and which I also started to look for nearly to the end of the world, and, deeply touched in my heart, believe to have truly found it! Would you, most elated, not tell me, if my recognition is correct?”

[8] I said: “It would be of little use to you if I say yes or no; you must recognize it yourself! Search, and it will be clear to you! You have come so far, then you also get even further; but you yourself have to want it seriously and firmly! Every outwardly tuition is of no use, if not simultaneously accepted from within. See, you now speak Hebrew quite well! Can you remember having ever learned this language somewhere? Ask also your companions who also now understand this language quite well, if they at some stage have learned this language! Go and convince yourself!”

[9] The leader guides his camel to his companions and speaks in Hebrew to them. All understand him and also answer him in our language. About this the leader is completely overcome with amazement and cannot explain to himself, how he and all his companions came to the knowledge of the Hebrew language; since he doesn't know that I can provide such.

[10] After this experience the leader returns to Me, still sitting on his camel, and says: "Most elated person on earth! In my black skin I am at a loss here; since this is my first trip which I ever have made! I never ever have made acquaintance with languages and customs of other countries and am totally poor regarding all kinds of experiences. And at home in my own country things are very simple. The land is good and beautiful, but it does not offer anything new. It is therefore possible that this land has the property that a foreigner, as soon as he enters the land, also takes in the spirit of the local language and be able to immediately speak to the natives, as if he himself would be a native. If such is possible or impossible, I cannot say; therefore, could you give me an explanation for this! In my own country I was never able to test this, since never ever did a foreigner come to us!"

[11] I said: "First dismount your camels, lead them onto the field nearby the sea, so that they can take a quite necessary rest, to be able to take you back to your country more easily; because the way back is not shorter than from there here to us! Do this and come back again; it then will show how much light you are able to endure!"

[12] The leader bows and says: "Most elated person of persons! You are quite right, if we only dare to put our most unholy feet on this holy land; since according to my visions, this land must be of an immeasurable holiness!"

[13] I said: "If it is for the feet of your camels not too holy, it will certainly not be too holy for your human feet!"

[14] Says the leader: "Yes, truly, truly, truly so! O most elated person of persons of the earth, you are most kind and exceedingly wise!"

[15] Thereupon he guides his camel back to his companions and extends My wish to them. Immediately the camels are lying on their knees, and the riders climb onto the ground. Thereupon these well trained animals stand up again and are led to the field at the sea where they start to graze quite comfortably. Ten Negroes are ordered to look after the camels, the rest together with their leader immediately return back to Me.

[16] When they arrived back where I was, I first ask the leader about his name, and he says: “My name is equal to what I am; in our tongue it is Ou bratou vishar. With us nobody has a name except for his manner of activity; otherwise we are called equally: Slouvi.”

14. THE STORY OF OUBRATOUVISHAR ABOUT HIS TRIP TO MEMPHIS

[1] I ask further: “Where did you get this quite commendable education?”

[2] Says Oubratouvishar: “About ten years ago I and my servant went along the Nile, accompanied by another twenty of the strongest under servants, who led a nice herd of cattle; because if someone wants to travel there, he must take along a rich herd, otherwise he might perish along the way. Figs and dates do not grow everywhere, but only on good and fertile ground; but there is no shortage of grass along the Nile, and therefore he always has the nourishing milk of cows, which is the spice of every food.

[3] Thus equipped, we tried, as said earlier, ten years ago or ten rain seasons ago, to make a trip downwards. For a few days we made good progress without any problems; but at the third day we already heard from far away a mighty thundering noise. We hurried our steps and after a time in which one would count a thousand stones, we came to the first downfall of the Nile. There we had a good view to move forward. One of our best climbers climbed onto a high rock, to investigate, how the area looks like. When he came back to me, he described a route to

me, which went quite far away to the left of the Nile, but far downwards again returns to the Nile. I decided to follow this route. There surely was no shortage of rocks and other unpleasantness on this detour. Only in the evening did we finally arrive under a great heat at a field overgrown with many palms and papyrus trees and a rich spring in the centre, which we and the herds appreciated a great deal. Here we rested for a full day.

[4] At the second day we were moving again with the first crack of dawn and continued our journey. At sunrise we again reached the Nile and came to a broad road never seen before, on which we within half of a day came close to the city, of which our grandparents had much to tell about. About two-thousand steps outside the city we setup camp; however, I and my servant rode into the city, to ask for permission, to setup camp nearby the city with our herds.

[5] When I and my servant got into the city, we were surrounded by a crowd of very brown people, who asked me who I am and where did I come from. Others immediately guessed and said: ‘Thot e Noubiez!’ (This is a Nubian!), and I said: ‘Yes, I am a Nubian and I want to experience and learn a few good and beautiful things from you perfect people!’

[6] Then these inquisitive people send an old man to me, who asked me in great detail about many things, and finally even went with us to our campsite and only there he revealed himself completely, stating that he was the high priest of this city and at the same time was a governor appointed by Rome for the city and its wide surrounding. I immediately gave him a present in the form of seven of the best cows and two bulls and twenty of our sheep with the finest wool.

[7] This made the old man very friendly and he said to me: ‘Our old and pure wisdom will be very useful to you! But do not take up any of our totally spoilt customs; since they are worse than worse! This city was once the pride of the country, which is still very clearly expressed in its name: Memavise (Greek: Memphis) = ‘has the highest name’; now this nameless highest

is only a large heap of rubble, as you soon will convince yourself!

[8] The people who still live here, partly does not have any believe left in a highest God being, and partly is stuck in the darkest superstition, of which it can never be freed. Only a few of us still live in the old, true recognition of the one, everlasting, true God. The people, the blind and stupid, believe in a few thousand gods; even to animals and their remains a divine worshipping is attached and we have to leave it at that.

[9] Most likely our ancestors have already planted the seed for it, namely thereby, that they paid to some animals, because of their usefulness, a type of semi divine respect, in order to encourage the people to look better after these useful land- and domestic animals. By that the elders of course only wanted to portray to the still very low standing people the multiple radiation of the divine love and wisdom; but in time this people's story became more and more venerable the deeper it sank into the past, and appears more and more covered in a certain divine breath, and evil and unscrupulous so called people's teachers had an easy task, to attach to all events from primordial historic times some divinity, to bury the blind people as deep as possible in the deepest superstition.

[10] Therefore take great care, you honest Nubians, and only accept what you will hear from me, as a correct truth; however, everything you will see and hear from the people, turn away from, since it is worse than bad! You will see them sacrificing and conduct all kinds of empty ceremonies; yes, at great festivities you will even see me with shining ornaments at the front. Do not take exception to it; since with everything only my skin is involved, but my inner is and always will be with the one, everlasting, only true God, whose love is my life and whose light is my true knowledge and recognition.

[11] But you and your servant come by foot with me to my residence in the city, where I will give you all the necessary instruction, how you and your companions have to behave yourself here; I also will show you the right place to camp with

your herds, on which you as foreigners can stay for a full year, without being bothered by anyone. However, you and your servant will stay with me, so that I can instruct you in many things.’

[12] Said I: ‘Good uppermost! You will allow us, that the present which you mercifully has accepted out of my hand, to bring it along to the city?’

[13] Said thereupon the dear-friendly and truly good governor: ‘Not now, but only after three days, when you have moved to a different field! However, there you have to put shoes on your feet, according to our custom; since at night a lot of little insects and worms are creeping on the sandy grass surface, get underneath the toenails and in time cause great pain. In my house I will provide you with these as best I can; since I have many servants, attendants and slaves.’

[14] We, I and my servant, went with the high priest to the large city. After about four-thousand steps we came to a large open place in the city, which was surrounded with impressive large buildings made from square formed rocks. A few of these large buildings were already considerably damaged, but many were still well maintained. One was build from many columns and inside the wide stretching colonnades one could see all kind of gigantic large statues; the columns were also engraved with a number of all kinds of signs and scriptures, which the high priest explained to me many times afterwards. Next to the hall of columns there was a tremendously big palace in which there was a lot lively activity.

[15] The governor said: ‘See, this is my house; just come in and look at everything there is!’”

15. THE CURSE OF THE OVERCIVILIZATION OF THE EGYPTIANS

[1] (Oubratouvishar:) “In front of this palace were standing two tremendously big columns, completely freestanding, which were on all sides fully written with all kinds of signs, figures and scriptures; also in front of the large column hall were similar two columns constructed.

[2] With shy steps we entered the house of the high priest and had to walk for a while before coming to the living rooms. O, in there it was so marvelously beautiful, leaving us completely speechless.

[3] In the spirit I compared my poorest hut at home with this residence and said to myself: Why are we blacks so amazingly poor in our knowledge and recognition? Why can't we produce such buildings? Why are we still not able to produce metals? We still have no other cutting tools than those, which we exchanged from the Egyptians for our raw nature products! How wretched are our looms, how badly finished our clothes! Among us there is no spirit, no talent, no zeal; we are hardly on a little higher level than our monkeys!

[4] When I was lost in such thoughts, my heart broke, and I started to cry and said loudly: O, why are we blacks not entirely animals that can neither think nor feel anything?! What marvelous things can true humans, these true earth gods, create, while we black half people and half animals can do nothing compared to this! And still we have to mightily feel about all these marvelous things, which the true humans have created!

[5] Then the governor said to me: “Don't be bothered by that! We already have become old men for whom these marvelous things cannot provide joy anymore, since we have already over-lived ourselves; but you are still children full of strength and full of increasingly more and more awakening zeal. For this world we already have completed our lives, our crowns are lying wilted in the grave of oblivion, our palaces are collapsing, and our present knowledge and recognition is worse than very bad.

Here we have just a few smiths and a few weavers left; all our technological needs we have to satisfy either from Rome or from Greece.

[6] Yes, once a few thousand years ago, in this country were living of course more gods than humans and erected works, about which the later descendants of this earth will still be amazed! But what we currently produce is equal to destruction only, physically as well as in the soul. But you are still an unspoiled, primordial grown and young and strong nation, can think and want, and therefore soon can become greater in your works than the people of this country ever were.

[7] But if you as people want to really live happily on this earth, stay with your old simplicity! Firstly it costs you little troubles and work, and secondly you only have very few needs, which are easily covered. Your cattle breeding on the rich grass lands makes you have little worries and problems, and your agriculture, which you only do on a very limited scale, is anyway accounted for as nothing; also your clothes are simple and easy to produce. You therefore need only very little time to serve your physical needs, and therefore can engage more and exclusively in spiritual considerations! And see, this is much more valuable, than to build such palaces with the bloody sweat of hundred thousand times hundred-thousand human lives, so that time, the tooth of destruction, has thousands of years to gnaw on it!

[8] And finally, what is such an artificially heap of rocks placed on top of each other, compared to only a blade of grass, which was built by the great spirit of God? I say to you: nothing! Every blade of grass, every tree is a building of God, grows out of the dear earth without our troubles and work, and within a short time refreshes our palate with a sweet fruit. But which troubles and frightening work does such a palace costs the people! And what do they gain from it afterwards, when their work after many bloody years is completed? Nothing but a wretched nourishment for their haughtiness, the awakening of jealousy of foreign nations, leading in time to war and all kind

of pursuit!

[9] Truly, you my dear black friend, this is the wretched fortune of my people, who were so stupid to cover their most beautiful and most fertile grass lands with such dead palaces, on which otherwise many hundred thousands of the most fertile trees could pour their noble fruit into the lap of the people living in very simple huts! See, on the land on which this city is build, ten thousand people together with their large herds could easily find enough space to live; where currently of course a hundred thousand people live in these damaged walls! But what a live most of them have!

[10] Previously, as the history of this country teaches us, this land was a breadbasket, from which, in time of need, foreign nation were supplied with bread; now, not seldom we have to import the grain from far away countries and nations! Our herds are in a most terrible condition. Thousands of people in such a city does not work at all because of their little gold and silver, day after day idly walking around, keep venal prostitutes and not seldom converse with them in a lowest, animal like manner; this always produces a lot of illnesses – something that you don't know about at all. During the day, as long as the sun shines, you will see this large city completed depopulated; only when the cooler night has come, they come out their artificial rock caves like predators and talk to all kinds according to their desires. And see, you simple son of nature, these are the blessings which the people earn from their great stone culture!”

16. THE BLESSING OF THE ORIGINAL CIVILIZATION OF SIMPLE PEOPLE

[1] (Oubratouvisar:) “Therefore stay in your great and original natural purity and never long for such a wretched land culture! Never build any cities! Stay in your simple huts and you can stay for all times of times the happiest nation on earth, and this even more so, if you stay with the true recognition of the everlasting true God, and only honor and love Him! Even if you cannot see Him, He can see you, and He always will provide you with the power, which is necessary for you to combat any elements hostile to man. According to the original laws of nature, man is in charge of everything which lives and breathes on, under and above the earth.

[2] You are still, what humans should be! The fierce lion, and tiger, panther, hyenas, wolves, bears, snakes and adders are fleeing your presence; only the tame herds follow your every step! With such properties equipped, man is still standing on this elevated primordial level of being, on which the Creator has placed him in the beginning of all creatures. Lay down on the lawn where the rattle snake and the poisonous viper are having their loose game, and they leave the holy place, on which man, as master of nature, is taking a rest! The evil ants – the curse of some forests and steppes – emigrate as soon as man in his primordial strength enters the area and builds a house for himself. The lion, the panther, the most evil tiger are keeping away from the herds which are guarded by true people, and the crocodile, the dragon of the Nile, is never seen in those countries, which is inhabited by humans. The Ibis, the stork and the icz ne ma (ichneumon = does not have poison) willingly serve man and cleaning the land of all creeping animal vermin, and the sharp seeing eyes are searching for all cadavers and consume it, so that the air is never polluted by it.

[3] O, what a marvelous being of true people in every area, and what wretched life of people in the cities, which are full of haughtiness and full of stinking self-love! In them all the

primordial life strength is gone; they are foreign bodies, foreign beings in the large kingdom which surrounds them, and who are standing outside any connection with God and therefore also with any other creatures. They must build hard castles to protect themselves against a hostile nature!

[4] Today I will let spend hundred people the night on the grass land which I indicated to you where you can stay, and the next morning not one will survive with his life; since these are not people anymore, but weak silhouettes of the same, and their crippled bodies are true dwellings of all kinds of evil and unfermented nature spirits and unnatural behavior. Their outer life-circle is not their divine individuality anymore, but of an animal-like nature, and therefore there is no power left in them anymore and even less so outside them. The outer nature does not sees in them the highest culminating goal of their being anymore, but only a total depravity and complete destruction of that level, on which all creatures are supposedly reach their highest goal. Therefore all creatures are acting hostile against such people and are trying to destroy them in every possible manner, because there is nothing to expect from them anymore.

[5] Therefore, my noble, black skin friend, you and your whole nation should be happy, that you are black and that you are still living in life's innocent spring huts; because especially therefore you are still that, what a true person should be according to the order of the highest spirit of God! Therefore, always stay as you are now, also with regard to your latest descendants, then you will never have to complain about distress and misery of the human life!'"

17. THE NUBIANS STAYING IN EGYPT

[1] (Oubratouvishar: The governor:) ““And now we want to go out to the place, which I will show you where you can stay! At the same time I will provide a guard for you for the whole period of your stay here, who will keep the bad people away from you; because they would not make a lot of it to destroy you to the ground, and this physically and morally. I do not ask you if you have understood me completely; since I know that you have understood me well and in future will understand me even better!’

[2] Upon these words the governor gave a sign by hitting a strong resounding metal plate, and like a miracle a large number of armed men of dark brown color appeared and the governor gave them instructions in a to us foreign tongue, which we did not understand. But when the truly good governor noticed my uneasiness, he comforted me by explaining to me, what he had spoken to the armed men. It was about our best possible protection against the obtrusiveness local spoiled inhabitants of the city, which he regarded not as people anymore.

[3] One of the leaders of the guards, who was dressed nearly the same as our friend who showed us the way, remarked to the governor, that the otherwise rich grass land was a place full of snakes and adders, on which no person or cattle could live.

[4] Said the governor: ‘Spoiled people including their cattle of course not; but these are still real primordial people, who are still true masters of all of nature and its creatures of whichever nature! They will not harm them, and also they will, together with their brood, leave this otherwise most beautiful place immediately. And you as their guards will not have the slightest problems with this vermin, of this you can be fully assured of! But now, bring me twenty-two leather band shoes, which we will give to these unspoiled people, so that they do not unnecessarily hurt their feet on our sharp sandy soil!’

[5] Soon the shoes arrived. Me and my servant immediately received the most comfortable shoes; on instructions of our

governor the other twenty were taken to our companions by four of the guards, and when they also had put on the shoes, they were asked by the guards to follow them to the new grass land. But the governor, I and my servant and the other guards walked through many streets to the place outside the city, where the beautiful grass land was situated, fully covered with the best grass, many dates and figs and oranges and a lot of other fruit. But I also could see that the land was visited very little by other people; since from quite a distance we could hear the rushing sound of countless rattle snakes.

[6] Soon afterwards also my companions with the large herds and camels arrived. When they arrived at the field, they did not wait until the vermin fled before us and our herds, but without the slightest fear took possession of the land and its fruit, immediately walked across the large pasture, and all vermin fled to the Nile to such an extent that for half an hour long the surface of the Nile was covered with vermin; also four Nile dragons fled before my companions and our herds.

[7] The governor also explained this phenomena to the guards assigned to us and said, that they could, without any fear, go with us to all parts of the field; since he was fully convinced that already for the first night they will not find a single adder or snake on the whole field. And it was so: Already after an hour in the evening, the pasture was cleaned from any vermin of whatever nature.

[8] On the other side of the Nile we could see whole herds of Egyptian sheep fleeing from the pursuing poisonous emigrants, and the shepherds were fleeing with the herds. The shepherds screamed terribly, nevertheless escaped onto a Nile bridge; but the herd suffered damages, since quite a few lambs were caught by the large beasts and were consumed. There were also masses of rabbits on the other side, which were also surprised by the unexpected visit; since many of the young were consumed by the creeping beasts.

[9] The guards took note of the earlier inaccessible nicest dates, figs and oranges, and also of the most beautiful *roschize*

(Johannes bread), which was generally used for camel food.

[10] The captain of the guards said to the governor: ‘Honor Isis and Osiris! Finally we also can harvest here, what was not the case since human memory!’

[11] But the governor said: ‘The harvest for a full year will belong to those, who cleaned this field; only what they allow you to take, you can take, but not a single leave from a tree unilaterally! In addition refrain from calling to your trifle land gods in front of these highly unspoiled people; since among you is not one whom I did not teach the only true God! Stay with Him, but certainly no Isis and also no Osiris, nor Apis anymore! Because all this is and will forever be nothing!’

[12] After this the governor said to me: ‘As you now can see for yourself, you have been supplied with everything with the help of the Highest! I will leave you now, but tomorrow with the first crack of dawn I will be with you again; then I will give you the right lessons, here in the great, open temple of the Highest! And what you have learned from me, you will also pass on to your companions! And now keep well under the protection of the Highest!’

[13] With these words he returned to the city. He had to enjoy for quite some time already a great respect from the Egyptian people; since whoever met him, bowed to the ground before him. But he pretended not noticing any of the homage, but went, as if deeply in thoughts, quickly straight his way.

[14] When the sun had set, many onlookers came from the city; but nobody dared to come closer than twenty steps towards the infamous snake field. Some called to us to leave the field, otherwise we would inevitably suffer the greatest harm. However, the guard pushed the curios back and explained to them that there was no danger anymore, since through our secret powers all the poisonous vermin had swam across the Nile.

[15] Thereupon the curios people went back and we attended to our herds, which gave us this evening so much of the best and most nutritious milk, that we were not able to consume it all. We asked the guards if they also drink milk. They confirmed

this with joy and we gave them so much milk that they also were not able to enjoy anymore of it. The considerable rest we poured in containers which we brought along, to make cheese.

[16] For a whole year we lived here and have learned a lot from the good governor, namely with regard to the true recognition of the most high God being. With the greatest friendliness we were allowed to depart after a year and returned happily to our country.

[17] Soon afterwards I had my visions, immediately arranged for a caravan and only wanted to travel to Memphis, to inform the governor about my visions. But he already knew about you, most Elated, and showed the way to here, showed me the very wide way to Alexandria and entrusted me to an expert skipper, who brought us here. He also gave me a translator, but whom I did not take with me.

[18] Now you know, most elated person of all persons, how I came to my little wisdom; but now tell me with certainty that I am standing at the right place, or if I have to move on, since I cannot stay for long, because my way home is quite far.”

18. OUBRATOUVISHAR WANTS TO BE SURE WHERE THE LORD IS STAYING

[1] I said: “I already have told you, that it is of little or no use to you, if I told you: ‘I am it!’ or: ‘I am not it!’ That you must in anyway find by yourself; and this you can do quite easily, since you have no shortage of the spirit. Just think what is possible for people and what is impossible for them! Didn’t you noticed anything, or didn’t you have noticed anything at yourself or with somebody else?”

[2] Said the black: “As I have noticed earlier – except that we, with entering this land, simultaneously were able to speak your tongue, nothing unusual occurred to me; I speak openly and clearly! When I came here, for the first moment a few things appeared so to speak miraculous to me; but the longer I stay here, the more natural you all occur to me.

[3] The language is therefore the only thing bordering a miracle, however, it can be, as I have remarked earlier, quite natural, although an unexplainable special property of this country. Since I have experienced similar occurrences during my travels through the large country of Egypt: we met with Romans and Greeks; they spoke their tongue, and we understood them quite well and could also converse with them. With talking it did not went so easily like here; but this can be a result of the composition of the country, its air or odor!

[4] As basically very simple people, we are much more receptive for all kinds of appearances and impressions. As such we can see the souls of the dead, also those who according to their own confession, never carried a body. These nature souls can also be recognized, in that they suddenly can change their form and dissolve in all kind of smaller beings, and again pull together back in a human form, which is a phenomenon that we have never observed with souls of our dead brothers and sisters.

[5] We asked the wise governor in Memphis, if he has seen such with his own eyes. But he said: This was only a property of very simple and elementary nature people, who do not know any artificial life even by name. With him and the Egyptians it never has happened. So now and then isolated cases occur, but so undetermined and so unexplainable as possible, while with us everything is defined, natural and therefore also explainable.

[6] From that it also is quite explainable, how we could so quickly understand and speak a complete foreign language. If you, most elated person of all persons, consider this, you with your most outstanding wisdom will realize, how during our short stay here, nothing unusual has been noticed by us, from which we irrefutable could infer, that we with great certainty have already reached the place, which I have seen in my vision.

[7] A lot corresponds with it: at the shores of a small inland sea and a fisher house build against the mountain; a lot of people of high standing and reputation; also you, in all seriousness, have a lot in common with the beyond all concepts shining person, which I have seen seven times in my vision with the highest

delight. But this light person made everything happen through his word; he spoke it, and it was there! Heaven and earth was under his control, and uncountable crowds waited for his signs!

[8] Now, most elated person of all persons, this is surely not the case here! I found here in you, just like two years ago with the governor in Memphis, rather good and wise people, but from that what I expected, until now I have found nothing and therefore ask you, if I have come to the right place or not. If you say yes, I will believe it and stay; since your word is perfectly sufficient for me, since you are in every case a deep wise person. However, if you say no, or doesn't say again nothing, we will start with our journey back home and get our herds back, which we left behind in exchange for gold and silver in Memphis according to the recommendation of the wise governor, as well as the unused sum, which the governor has loaned to us for leaving the herd, but of which he had the use in the mean time.

[9] You, most elated person of all persons, can see, that I and all of us, irrespective the fact that our flesh is not adorned with a white skin, are not false nor sly; we all are searching for the full truth, which is of the only importance to us, and we have the living hope, to find it either here or anywhere else! If we therefore are at the right place, confirm this, and with pleasure we will do everything, whatever you ask from us!"

[10] I say to Raphael: "Go and give them a sign, so that they can know, where they are!"

[11] Raphael immediately goes to the black (Oubratouvisnar) and says: "Friend, what is it that you have left behind in your fatherland, for what you wanted to return when in Memphis, to go and fetch it? You wanted to give it to the governor as a special present for all the troubles he had with you, and therefore have wrapped in fresh linens, but afterwards forgot about it because of your hurried departure, namely in a corner of your hut, where it still lies. If you wish, I bring it to you in one moment! Speak – as you wish, it will happen!"

[12] Says the black: "Not to convince me that I have been at the

right place, because already thereby, that you have told me, what I have forgotten at home, I know, that I'm at the right place, since such only a all seeing eye of God can see, but you would do me quite a good favor; since on my way back, I want to make the governor happy, since he is a great friend of rare forms of nature! Actually, the whole thing can have no other value than an imagined value, but certainly not a real value! Nevertheless, it is most beautiful!"

[13] Here Raphael gives the in linen wrapped, beautiful form of nature, to the black and asks him if this is the right item.

[14] At this opportunity the black nearly fainted and screams, saying: "Yes, this is it, this it is! But how possibly could you bring this jewel here, since you have not left for one moment my presence?! Have you stolen it from me as a young, courageous Egyptian, in service of the governor, in a for me incomprehensible clever manner? Did you actually a year ago have secretly followed us, when we returned from Memphis back home, up to my hut and has remembered the location of my hut?"

[15] Yes, but why all these my stupid questions?! A few moments before our departure I was holding it in my hands, but while packing my camel and getting together my herd, I placed it in a corner of my hut and covered it with a pumpkin shell! With getting together the herd and packing the camel, I forgot about the beautiful natural statue; you could not have stolen it from me! You obviously have collected it; but – how, how, how is this possible for you, a person from visible flesh and blood?! Since here, there and again here was a quickest moment! This is an action that is only possible for a God! You are either a God yourself or a true servant of him!"

[16] Says Raphael: "Not the first, but certainly the second! However, see, when collecting your beautiful natural statue, I still forgot something, namely the pumpkin shell with which you have covered your little jewel! But you should have it as well! See, here it is! Put your little jewel in it and reveal it to us; since there are many here who want to see your found treasure!"

19. THE NUBIANS RECOGNIZE THE LORD

[1] Here the blacks were overcome by complete dizziness from surprise over surprise; since this was something they regarded above everything. They are pure, still completely unspoiled nature people and as still true masters of nature, they are able to perform some events by the firmness of their full believe and will, which must appear to an already deeply downgraded person of worldly commonness, as a great miracle, and it would be therefore quite difficult, to make an impression on these souls by any other miracle. The healing of an illness would be quite misplaced; since these real children of nature do not know any illnesses. Their old people always reached a high age, and their death is always just a quiet and painless falling asleep.

[2] Their children never die, because they were fathered in the right order, and were born into this world as fully ripe and healthy to the core; afterwards they were fed in a natural way and therefore no ill material could be deposited in them. If one had healed any illnesses in front of them, one first had to explain to them what an illness is and whereby it originates. However, with that one would have caused them more harm than be of any use; since to be knowledgeable about sin and its consequences, means as much as nearly having committed it already.

[3] Somebody might be of the opinion that an awakening from the dead might be quite effective. Would also be not suitable for these people! Since they view the death of the body as a great relief of God towards the people and would regard such an act even as a transgression against the order of the most high spirit of God, for as long they are not taught anything completely better about Myself. The calling up of a great storm they would view with absolutely natural eyes of their extremely sensitive souls; since they themselves always have a mighty influence on the nature-spirits of the air, the water, the earth and the fire. But a movement which surpasses the speed of one of their shot arrows by incomparable magnitude is a true miracle for these

people, which only can be performed by God and His highest servant spirits, but never by a reasonable weak and mortal person of this earth.

[4] After the blacks had recovered from their complete amazement, the leader said to his companions: “Brothers! I and all of you have now seen a deed, which can only be performed by God; since even with our thoughts we cannot move that quickly to our fatherland and from there back again to here, as fast as this servant of God has went to and fro with this my little jewel! Therefore we are at the right place and must only move with the greatest reverence and continued inner worshipping of Him, who sits their at the big table with an inconceivable most divine and most elated expression.

[5] What He will speak to us in His inexpressible mercy and grace, will from now on our holiest commandment, which we will keep as the clear rocks of our fatherland, also in our descendants until the end of all times, which this earth still has to go through! You know what the wise governor has prophesied of this most elated God person’s everlasting dignity! It is in fact so, of which we are now fully convinced! Since it is so and not otherwise, we also know what we have to do to follow!

[6] The trip to here was far and difficult; even if it was by a thousand times further and also a thousand times more difficult as it were, it would not in the slightest manner weigh up against this greatest, incomprehensible highest, in all eternity undeserved mercy! Since there sits the everlasting, almighty spirit in human form, who made heaven and earth and everything that there is, only by His will and from His will, just as the wise governor in Memphis has amply explained to us.

[7] We are now standing in front of the true, everlasting God, who made us and has given us life. Every moment of our life is in His hand; if He wanted it, we would not be there anymore. In short, only He is everything in everything, and everything that there is, is not without Him! This is what my vision means and what the governor in Memphis had taught us, and therefore we

have to accept this and believe it forever. – It now seems if the everlasting Lord and Master wants to talk to us! Therefore be attentive, as if we are on a most dangerous lion hunt, how it was described to us by the governor in Memphis!”

20. FALSE HUMILITY

[1] After the black man has made this rather worthy speech to his companions, I called the leader and asked him, if he and his companions were not hungry and thirsty, and, if they would be hungry and thirsty, what they wish to have to eat and to drink. Since the trip along the sea is exhausting, and they surely need something to eat and to drink, and therefore they should let hear their voices and they will be served immediately!

[2] Says Oubratouvishar: “O what mercy! You everything in everything asks a wretched earthworm that he should express his needs before You, You most elated, everlasting spirit! However, the worm rolling in the dust before You, because of exceedingly overpowering reverence does not dare to express one word before Your divinity, in order not to say a clumsy word to You, everlasting Most Holy, which might displeases You, making You look at us with angry eyes. We still have from Egypt a few bags full of dried figs and dates and also some bread that was backed twice, which should be sufficient for our short stay here taking into account our moderation! Therefore I bring You with the most thankful and remorseful heart my little or even nothing meaning gratitude for Your exceedingly large mercy granted to us!”

[3] I said: “Yes friend, if you always come to Me with such immense and more than three quarter unnecessary reverence, it will be even for Me nearly impossible, to give you a light which you can take to your fatherland! By the way, you are not really honoring Me a great deal, by regarding yourself, apparently also being My work, as nothing and placing yourself deeply below the dignity of a worm rolling in the dust of all nothingness! Because through such low self-consideration of yourself before

Me, your Creator, you also downgrade Him quite extensively, who has created and formed you out of His highest wisdom and love!

[4] See, if a person shows you a work of art, which he has made, and you buy it from him for yourself, because you like it, would you thereby honor the wise artist, if you praise above all his other works and the artist himself, but for the marvelous piece of art which you have bought, you cannot find enough bad words of criticism, because it now belongs to you?

[5] See, this manner of humility before Me is therefore not at all wise, but foolish and boorish! Since if you regard yourself as too bad and worthless, you thereby say quite easily understandable to My face, that I am a wretched bungler regarding My whole creation.

[6] Ah, if you also recognize My value in a justified manner in yourself, and does not regard yourself as too infinitive small, wretched and bad, in order to discuss this and that with Me, you are honoring Me in yourself and recognizes My divine excellence also on your own ground; with such disposition, you can draw from My presence this true and living use, for which you actually have travelled here. By the way your exceedingly great humiliation before Me, is not a sin from your side towards Me; since it is based in your arch-devout education from childhood.

[7] But now you also have received a right opinion about this; since with this your current opinion, we would not get along with each other; because you would have a continuous unlimited devout shyness about Me, and it would force you, to leave this place as soon as possible, which is too unbearable holy for your devout feeling, and back in Memphis and finally back home you would twaddle a great deal about My for you extraordinary and unbearable holiness! And this would be the only use, which you for yourself, for your people and your people's descendants have taken from here! Would you be content with that?

[8] Certainly not! Since during a more illuminated moment of

your life, you had to ask yourself loudly by saying: ‘Yes, what is this now all about?! Have I undertaken such a far and difficult trip upon my own decision, only to continuously despair of such deepest reverence on the so laboriously found place of destination? No, this was such a terrible delight and bliss, of which I do not want a repetition for the rest of my life!’ See, this is what you would have, for making the trip to here!

[9] Therefore it also says here, to let reason prevail a little and think, what is right and fair in every situation of life, and you will get trough everywhere with goodness and honesty and you always will profit the living use for life. Let go of your excessive reverence for Me! Love Me as your Creator, Father, Master and Lord with all life’s strength, and also love your brother like yourself, and you will do more than enough! And if you want to address Me, simply call Me Lord and Master, what I actually am. Everything else, however, does not belong here!”

21. OUBRATOUVISHAR DESCRIBES HIS HOMELAND NUBIA

[1] (The Lord:) “Earlier I have asked you if you are hungry and thirsty, and I was asking you this, because I can only see too well that you are full of hunger and thirst; the day is already four hours long, and since yesterday noon you haven’t eaten nor anything to drink; on the ship you could not have any milk, and the water was already scale and as such bad. And therefore My immediate concern for you is, that you should receive bodily strengthening; since without it you could not take up the required rest, which is necessary to take up the spiritual food more long-lasting. Because to preach someone the Gospel, where the hunger and thirst comes out of his eyes and ears, before feeding him, would be the crown of human self-loving foolishness! Therefore also you should first be fed bodily; only then we will look after the Gospel!

[2] However, here, you will have to be content with My table, contrary to your custom, and your moth-eaten dates and figs for

your camels to eat. Therefore sit at the tables over there which are empty, and soon you will be provided with sufficient food and drinks! You, Oubratouvishar, sit here; since also you are a real king for your people, and this is a table for kings, who have to decide among each other how to lead their people and develop them to become true human beings!”

[3] Everybody obeys to what I said, and our Marcus with the help of invisible helpers is at once ready with a sufficient quantity of the best fishes; and when the blacks were sitting at the tables, fish, bread, salt and wine is placed on the tables, and it is indicated to the guests, that they should consume what has been placed in front of them. Soon they started to eat the still steaming fishes, took bread and wine, and found everything very good and good tasting.

[4] The leader who already had more courage, said: “Lord of my life, such good tasting food has never before touched my palate! At times we also eat fish at home; but this is penance food for us. Who behaved disobediently against the existing order, have to eat fish; if we could prepare them like this, truly, they would cease to become penance food!

[5] What kind of water is this, what we are drinking here? This tastes indescribable good; one could drink this without being thirsty and keep on eating this honey sweet bread! In Memphis I sometimes also got a piece of bread to eat from the governor, but this wasn't by far not as sweet as this. However, above all I admire this water! Where is the spring of this water? Can one buy it here from you? I want to take some of it to my fatherland, so that they can taste a water from the earth of this heavenly country.

[6] The earth is also much more beautiful here than with us! Here exists an extraordinary variety! Everywhere there is an abundance of growth of herbs, bushes and trees; with us there are only certain fields which are grown like that, otherwise everything is bare, desolate and blank. Here most of the mountains are covered up to the top with the most beautiful trees and look quite softly; with me at home they are naked

rocks, only on a few places covered with some gray-red moss. They look as if destroyed and weather-beaten. Their color is mostly burned red and dark gray, and in most cases they are so steep that one climbs them only here and there under the biggest endangerment of one's life. Once you have reached the top, one cannot endure the heat, in the afternoon not at all, since then the mountain tops begin to glow, so that fishes placed on the rocks are cooked within a few moments through and through, also the meat of lambs and goats. In the afternoon even the eagles cannot sit on a mountain top, and the ibexes climbing down to the fields and the rushing of the Nile.

[7] O, we live in a very hard and extremely hot country, where in times it is quite difficult to be and live as a person! Especially during the after-summer, it would be quite impossible to live far away from the Nile; since then there are days when the rocks and the sand begin to melt, especially if in the afternoon the wind begins to blow from midday. Then one almost can see flames rolling over the wide sand desert floor, and people and animals have no other choice then to hug the good Nile, which miraculously is a very cold stream in our region.

[8] Towards the last three month of the year, before the rain month arrives, it is the most terrible time of all, because then the fire storms are coming. It becomes dreadfully muggy. Clouds like incredible flame columns are rising from behind the mountains and finally cover the whole sky, and countless lightning strikes come crashing down from the gray-black blanket of the sky with the most fearsome thunder roaring and causing great terror to people and animals. Although they are not causing a lot of damage, because they dissipate high up in the air; however, it is no joke, to have to listen to this cracking, roaring, hissing and thundering for sometimes forty days and nights and also living with the fear to be horribly burned by one of the lightning strikes coming too close to earth, which happens so now and then, especially to those people, who during that time do not diligently smear their bodies with fat.

[9] If the fire time is over, it starts to rain and rains for about

four to six weeks or moon change times. The rain falls thinly but dense, and on some of the mountain tops it sometimes snows. Towards the end of the rain season it often gets sensitively cold, so that we have to warm ourselves at the fire. This is also not particularly pleasing, but nevertheless better than to live during the after-summer.

[10] This is our life and how we live and do things! We have to endure a lot of hardship and have only very few pleasantries. O, what heaven are these regions compared to ours! How much joy must there be to live in these true heavens on earth, and how desolate and sad does appear our country in comparison! But You, o Lord, wanted it like this, that we, stuck in our black skins, should not have it otherwise, and it will be perfectly alright as it is, and never ever has anybody grumbled against such Your divine arrangement!

[11] Our coal-black skin is in some regard quite a burden for us; since firstly it attracts, according to our manifold experience, heat by far more than any brighter color, and secondly we are deterrent ugly compared to your white appearance. For example how beautiful is this heavenly form of this here present maiden, and how ugly a maiden with us! We see and feel it, and still we cannot change our color! What beautiful hair you have, and what ugly, totally twisted, black short wool we have to embellish our heads! But we do not grumble and are content with everything, what You, o Lord and Master, have given us!

[12] But now I must show you my beautiful natural statue, and You, o Lord, will mercifully determine its value!"

22. THE TREASURE OF OUBRATOUVISHAR

[1] Here Oubratouvishar unwrapped his jewel from the cotton linen and placed it before Me, saying: “There it is, like I have found it between the rocks on a hillside, and could not do otherwise, than to pick it up and to keep it! Surely, never ever did any human hands have anything to do with it! It seems therefore to be a pure product, a so called play of nature. What is it, and what value can it have? Since I never want to give to anyone a present which is worthless.”

[2] I said: “This is a most valuable precious stone, namely a biggest cut diamond. Nevertheless, it was cut and polished through the hands of humans, and during the times when the Persians made war against the Egyptians and at that opportunity also penetrated the desert of Nubian, it was lost by a general when fighting with a large herd of hungry lions and panthers; with that you are going to present the governor of Memphis with an earthly enormously valuable present, and this because of its extraordinary rarity.

[3] See, this stone has been cut and polished for one-hundred-and-seventy years, and became the crown jewel of some kings of Persia, until finally a king honored one of his greatest generals with it; and actually this general lost it at the desert border of your country, where at that time there were swarms of lions and panthers. At that time I have placed these animals there, otherwise those at that stage very warlike Persians would have found you and would have thinned out your herds very badly.

[4] However, like you have been destined, to even find earthly the most valuable treasure, which has lain under the rocks for some hundred years, you also have been called, to find the greatest and most valuable treasure for the spirit and from there for your souls. You have searched and have found it in a most honorable way! Your black skin should not burden you and will remain one of the most respectable colors for Me.

[5] This gospel, which I now will preach to you, will only be

kept pure with you. You will become My pre-apostle for your black brothers and sisters! However, within a short time I will send to you a post-helper, who will guide you to a very fortunate land in your region and will teach you agriculture and other useful arts, which are of a great necessity for the life on this earth.

[6] In this to you still totally foreign country, you will be a contented and happy nation and will preserve the purity of My word and My teaching. Woe those, who will try to look for you during later times, to make you suffer and subjugate you; against them I Myself will pick up the raging sword and slay them to the last man! And as such you blacks should live in an isolated, very large corner always as a free nation until the end of times.

[7] However, should you in future disagree among each other – what must remain a possibility for the sake of your freedom, the mighty among you will make themselves kings, will torment you with hard laws, and your golden freedom will for a long time or even forever come to an end! Then your children will live in great suffering and long for redemption; but they will have to wait for it for a very long time. Therefore organize yourself in such a way, so that no kings arise among you – except those, like yourself! Since you are not a suppresser, but a true joy-maker for your people, and this is also inside My order, and this is how it should remain with you!”

23. THE BLACK PEOPLE WHO FOLLOWED AFTER

[1] (The Lord:) “My name is Jesus from Nazareth, earthly as a person, and Jehovah from eternity; but from now on Jesus will stay forever. In this name you will be able to do and to affect everything, not only temporary, but forever!

[2] Love Me as your God and Lord and Master above all and among yourselves like everybody himself, then you will remain in My love, in My strength and power, and My light will never leave you!

[3] However, if you become weaker in the love for Me and your poorer brothers and sisters, it will become dark in your hearts, and My strength and power in you will dwindle and become very small! Even if you call on My name and want to act through it, it will not provide you with My strength and power anymore; since all strength, all power and all successful doing in My name, will only be maintained by the love to Me and from it to your fellowman!

[4] My name on its own, does not achieve anything, but only the love in it, through it and for it, and therefrom to your fellowman! If a poor person came to someone and begs him for help, but this someone says to him: ‘Go and earn it for yourself’, truly, he does not have My love and will not overcome any power and any strength!

[5] Go now and tell this to your companions, and then come back, and I Myself will teach you another gospel! So be it!”

[6] Oubratouvishar bows before Me and went to the tables of his companions, to tell them, what he heard from Me. But how big was his amazement, when he, instead of the twenty who this time travelled with him, also found thirty-four women sitting at the table. He of course recognized them immediately as his neighbors and next of kin, and it is obvious that his first question was none other than: how and when have you followed me.

[7] And they answered him: “To see and hear for oneself is better, than to be informed about the miraculous events out of the mouth of even the most trusted eye and ear witness! We always were half a day’s travel behind you!

[8] We would not have undertaken this trip, if it was not for a rather indescribable beautiful shining white youth, coming like from the air to us and almost forced us to do it. We gathered a herd of cows, bulls and a small herd of sheep and came with it to Memphis; there, the good governor and his people already met us far outside the city and said, that he also received a message from a similar youth and therefore went out to meet us.

[9] He (the governor) told us about you, took in the mean time

our herds in good safekeeping and provided us in exchange with gold and silver in different weight and value categories, to exchange these wherever we went for all kind of food stuffs and other things and items. We thanked him and he gave us an escort up to Alexandria, who provided for us on our way with all kind of necessary things and also arranged for a save water basket in Alexandria, in which we were brought here over a never ending large water.

[10] When we put ashore, we found your tracks unscathed pressed into the sand and followed such tracks. Finally we came so close to you, that we clearly could see the dust thrown up by your camels; only when you were lost behind a forest and mountain, we couldn't see you any longer.

[11] But then the youth met up with us and brought us in a manner to here, that we could not say anything further, only that we ourselves are full of surprise that we are here! How we came from there to here, we do not know more about than even a very bad dream!

[12] However, this most Elated has instructed you to give us something! What is it? Speak! Since according to his figure he looks exactly like you have told us repeatedly from your visions, the very reason why you and we have travelled to here! Speak, speak!"

24. ISIS AND OSIRIS

[1] Says the leader: "We, my brothers and sisters, believe it, because we have been eye- and ear witnesses of this, what is in front of us and exists! All human wisdom, all mind and even the purest and most sober reason cannot grasp, that this can be possible, only to think about what is here.

[2] O, you cannot have a premonition and can form no idea, about this what is here! After having my visions, I have come close to imagine something immeasurable big, which will await me here; but about something most immeasurable and most infinitive, even my biggest and most daring thought did not dare

to reach such height, but nevertheless it is so and is there, unmistakably before our astonished eyes!

[3] You know, what entirely I alone and the governor have negotiated quite loudly in front of you one year ago in Memphis, although the governor quite often thought, that it would be sufficient, if only me have to learn his deep wisdom. But I said: 'See, lord, here my brothers and sisters! No one is lesser than myself; therefore you, lord, should not make an exception of me in front of them!' And thereupon he always opened his mouth loudly.

[4] When he about six month later led us to Kar-nag in Korak, to lift the old-famous Isis veil, more than half of you were also present and has heard and seen everything like myself.

[5] There we saw two strange pictures: firstly that the I-sis (the nourishing being of primordial life), covered behind a dense veil and next to it the picture of Osiris (*Ou sir iez*; the pasture of the pure, spiritual person).

[6] The first picture presented a gigantic woman, with many breasts seen at the breast; at times also a cow has been depicted instead of the woman with many breasts as seen by us.

[7] The second picture of *Ou sir iez* presented an odd being. A man was standing on a wide, rich pasture, surrounded by many herds, eagerly grazing, and the odd man was standing in the middle of all kind of fruit, and his position was like someone who is eating.

[8] Through these two pictures the Egyptians depicted, as you yourself have heard from the mouth of the wise governor, firstly the primordial being of the creating, feeding and maintaining God-being is depicted in a covered manner, and by the second uncovered picture everything created, living and consuming of the whole creation is presented.

[9] Here the governor began to explain to us all with deep words of wisdom the being of the only, everlasting, primordial-creating God, and we recognized that there must exist an almighty, most highest and exceedingly wise primordial being,

from whom all beings in the whole, most everlasting infinity have originated and also are continuously nourished and maintained.

[10] This primordial God-being cannot be seen or understood by anybody, since it fills the whole of infinity and is most secretly, omni present in space as well as time, which was the reason why the picture of I-sis was always covered. Nobody could and was allowed to lift the immense veil of I-sis, except the high priest at certain, especially holy times, but also he, only the lowest hemline in front of the people.

[11] At that stage you obtained the deepest respect of the primordial Godhead, and not less I myself. On the way from *Kar nag* (not naked, therefore dressed and covered) to *Ko rak* (modest like a crayfish) we spoke about nothing else than the primordial Godhead, and at each tree the governor explained to us that the inner is also covered from everyone's eyes, the covered picture of *I-sis*, and our amazement and reverence increased with each step of our camels carrying us.

[12] In every object of nature we began to see the puzzling picture of the covered and veiled *I-sis*, and the governor found a lot of joy in us, his black disciples, and from *Kar nag* we saw all of nature with complete different eyes as before.

[13] Which marvelous and great conversations did not took place afterwards between us, and of which reverence our whole heart was overcome, when in our labor free hours we guided our thoughts and words to the one, everlasting primordial God-being! How many times haven't we talked about this with the good and wise governor in Memphis, what nameless happy feeling it would produce in a person, if it was in any way possible to only once hear only a single word from the highest God-being, even if it was only very softly but nevertheless quite distinct, in ones heart!"

25. THE GREAT TEMPLE IN THE ROCKS ABU SIMBEL

[1] (Oubratouvishar:) “We asked the governor, if something similar has never occurred to an extremely just person on this earth.

[2] The governor shrugged his shoulders and said: ‘Directly most likely never; but for indirect communication there are true examples in the scriptures and from verbal transmissions over generations, that very just and devout people in moments of an enraptured state, saw the spirit of God as a light penetrating all spaces of infinity, and they themselves were part of this light. To all, however, to whom such mercy was given, confess that they were seized through and through by such indescribable feeling of joy in this light, and started to prophesy; and what they prophesied always came true. However, never ever has any mortal seen the true primordial God in another form!

[3] Man in a limited form, wants to bring the primordial God closer to himself, his heart is thirsty for it, to see the Creator in an accessible human form and with Him the everlasting primordial spirit, and to exchange words with Him like with a person. However, this is nothing than a foolish desire of the retarded people, which is in a certain way forgivable, but forever cannot be realized. Since the finite can never become infinite – and the infinite never finite!’

[4] This is what the wise governor said to us, and we understood this as best as our weak intelligence allowed us to.

[5] Nevertheless, despite of everything, in each one of us like by itself, a still so large divine personally started to grow, since we felt too much lost in the divine infinity and could not completely find our way therein. Our heart longed for a personal God who could be seen and loved, while our mind always declared war against our poor heart, which felt way too small, to comprehend the divine infinity with all our love, although the governor recommended to us, to love the primordial Godhead.

[6] The governor told us, that there was a nation on earth, by the name ‘Jews’. This nation had the most correct recognition of the

most high God. A first of their wise, a born Egyptian named *Moi ie sez* (which means: 'my admission', a name which was given to him by a princess, when she saved him from the Nile), had spoken to God for a period of 50 years. The spirit of God strictly forbade him to never imagine Him in any form of a picture! Also this wise at one stage expressed the desire according to his heart, to see Him personally, however got the answer, 'You cannot see God and live!'

[7] But when nevertheless the desire in the heart of the wise became more intense, the spirit of God instructed him to hide in a cave and come forward if called. The wise did that; and when called, he came forward and saw in a distance the back of God, shining brighter than a thousand suns! His face became thereupon so bright, that no person could look at him for a period of seven years without going blind, which was the reason why this person had to cover his face with thick materials for the entire period. All this, as you know, was told to us by the very wise governor.

[8] To what extend all this was so or otherwise, we would not know how to judge; we only know that never one untrue word has come over the lips of the governor. As he has heard it, in precisely the same way he gave it to us.

[9] You know, when we asked him, where in the whole land of Egypt, the true, everlasting primordial Godhead was ever worshipped and highly revered according to the most possible truth, he said: 'Not very far from here, namely in the great rock temple of *Ja bu, sim, bil* (which means: 'I was, I am and I will be')! Through a large and high gate the way leads to the inner of the big mountain hall. This is adorned with columns, which are carved from the rock. Between each column stands an armed giant of at least twelve man sizes, as if carrying the sealing of the temple.

[10] The inner is divided by an arch into three halls; in each, on both sides, are standing seven such giants, altogether fourteen giants in each of the three halls. These are symbols of the seven spirits of God. The hall is counting in its three sections six times

seven such giants, this shows, that God already from the beginning of all creation has set six time periods, and that in each of these endless long and always each other penetrating time periods, the same spirits have always carried everything and have worked everywhere. Each of the six long sides of the three part temple hall is engraved with all kind of signs and figures, which could be deciphered by him who was knowledgeable about the old wisdom, namely what the spirit of God has revealed to the primordial arch-wise of this country.

[11] At the end of the three halls, again the covered picture of the I-sis could be found, the uncovered Ou-sir-iez, and on the altar in front of the I-sis, the words engraved in hard rock: Ja-bu-sim-bil! At the entrance on both sides of the temple gate, there are two giants each in a sitting position, representing the four main element forces of God in nature; that they are sitting, indicates the order of rest, in which they have been placed by God, to serve all creatures according to the will of God.

[12] An inscription above the gate reminds the visitor of this holy site, that he always should enter the holy halls with a collected spirit. Who comes to the first hall, will find the first columns engraved with quite strange signs and figures; these indicate a sort of world war under the expression 'God's wars'.

[13] Now, in that I have not been too knowledgeable about the old wisdom, to explain this to you any further and deeper! Within 7 days I will lead you there, where you can see all this for yourself. Of course, the sharp tooth of time has damaged a few things at this ancient holy place; but most of it is still preserved quite well, and you still can learn a lot from it!

[14] Now, what feelings were starting to grow inside us! And we hardly could wait for the day on which the governor would lead us to the described holy place. When finally the day arrived, and we trotted on our camels there, how were our hearts glowing, when we began to come closer to the pre-temple, which should be nothing else than a grave of a few ancient wise men! How much did our hearts pounded, when we came to the great rock temple! Which indescribable impression made the

four personified elements, and didn't we nearly became speechless, when we entered the halls with burning torches? Why did all this seize us so mightily? Because we thought we are closer to the highest, true God-being then anywhere in Memphis.

[15] When we left the marvelous temple under many tears and sighs and the governor told us a few things from the ancient times of the earth, how we were moved by all this, so that finally we started to regard the whole earth as a large temple of God! Whether the few days were hot or more cool, we did not noticed; since our hearts had too much to do, namely with everything which could bring the primordial spirit of God closer to us. And still we completely missed the point. We surely knew a lot then; but the I-sis stayed covered and veiled, and no mortal was ever able to lift this mysterious garment of the everlasting Godhead.”

26. OUBRATOUVISHAR AND JESUS

[1] (Oubratouvisar:) “Only back home in our hot country did I got the visions! I told them to you as faithfully as I have received them through the apparent mercy of the Most High Spirit, and you all had the greatest joy about it, making you jumping up and down like young lambs on the pasture. Despite your happiness and cheerfulness, you nevertheless envied me in a honorable way in your hearts, because the wish was growing inside you to also have such visions. When I started the trip to here with my twenty companions after receiving secret instructions seven times, you could not endure it longer than half a day without me. You followed me and miraculously caught up with me here.

[2] Now we are at the holy place of the directions in my visions, and here we have infinitively more than Memphis, Karnag at Korag and the greatest temple in the world *Ja bu sim bil*, infinitively more than the most secretive I-sis picture! Look at the large table! In the centre of it, dressed in rose red clothes

and a blue pleated coat, over His shoulders flowing dense, golden-blond hair, sits not only the most highest divine spiritual, but also bodily the most highest God-being, the most living picture of the uncovered I-sis!

[3] When the governor laid the love for the infinitive God-being on our hearts, we felt, that the small human heart is completely incapable of such love, and thought and also said it, that we could love a personality carrying the fullness of the spirit of God above all, however, an infinitive divinity or infinity filled by the spirit of God, as something incomprehensible could not be loved, except if the love for such an infinitive God-being consists of the wondrous pressurizing of the too small, trifle person by the infinitive primordial divine omnipotence.

[4] How much were we not refreshed by the statement of the governor, saying that Moisez finally has seen the back of the primordial everlasting Godhead, even if his face shone so bright for seven years because of the indescribable highest light, that no person could look at him without going blind, and therefore the wise during that time had to cover his face with a threefold blanket. O, this story of the governor has refreshed us a lot, because by that we began to imagine the possibility of a personal God! From then on we began to love the most high God-being, and as a result of our love I infallible received my seven visions as invitation to here, since without it we would never could have come here.

[5] We now have the most high God-being personally in front of us, and He instructs us to do nothing else for our completion, than to love Him above all and each other like everyone necessarily loves himself!

[6] What are you saying to all this, my dear brothers and sisters? What are you feeling now, and what thoughts are keeping your hearts busy? O speak now and worship the most holy, everlasting primordial spirit, this God, whom until now, no mortal could imagine! Speak, speak! What are you thinking and feel right now? What are you experiencing now?"

27. THE BLACK PEOPLE DOUBT THE DIVINITY OF THE LORD

[1] Say the black companions who were still capable of speaking full of the highest possible astonishment: “Is this in any way possible? This quite plain and simple person should be the carrier of the most high God-being? What irrefutable proof do you have for this? Don’t you know that one has to be very careful by being imprudent to fall into a gloomy, superstitious idolism, which finally can become worse than a thousand covered I-sis pictures?! Just think of the dangers and misleading detours in which we could fall, if finally it is not the case! Think of the endless colossal concepts, which we received in Memphis and specifically at the great rock temple, about the primordial God-being by the mouth of the wise governor, and all this should be united and hidden in this man?! With God everything is possible; however, here not the slightest probability is visible to us! What indisputable proof do you have for this?

[2] Yes, if it is so, as you have told us now with your always most truthful expression, we then of course would have found the highest of the most highest, our life would have found its most elated goal, itself in its primordial reason, and there would be nothing left for us to look and search for! Since who found himself and God and the primordial reason of being, has found everything and has reached the holiest and most blissful goal in all fulness as shown by the governor!

[3] However, that we have found here all this, must be shown and proven quite strictly and more tangible, otherwise we could, as remarked earlier, end up in all kind of the greatest confusions because of our too great gullibility of which the governor has warned us against above all!

[4] Look at the infinitive large firmament with the countless many stars, which according to a very secretive teaching of the governor are immense worlds and only appear so small due to their immeasurable distances! Look at this our exceedingly large earth and everything on it what lives, is, stirs and moves!

Look at the sea, the mighty Nile, the sand, the gras, all the countless bushes and trees and all the animals in the waters, on earth and in the air! Look at the clouds of heaven and their power, the moon, the sun! Can you imagine and rationally think, that this certainly very wise person can oversee, maintain and guide the whole, everlasting infinity from the largest to the smallest, from this nearly hand wide ground surface? Yes, he even can perform miracles for us, as a person who is closely familiar with the secret forces of nature, as we have seen many of them in Cahirou and Alexandria; but what is this compared to the everlasting infinity and its countless, to us forever unknown beings and things?!

[5] Think about the great words of the governor, how he faithfully warned us about these venal cons and magicians, how he called them! A person, who with his magic art connects to a otherwise quite customary wisdom, as the governor has said, would, with the greatest ease try to become a ruler of the people of this earth and finally a God, and this person appears until now, to possess the best and richest talent for it! Therefore it means we have to be especially careful and demand proof, which in every regard is suitable, to bring the necessary light to this biggest matter! Since the greater, holier and more important this matter is or seems to become, the more all carelessness must be removed from it!

[6] If this is about the removal of a small stone which dirties the footpath, it is not necessary to have a special meeting for it, how this stone should be removed from the path. The next best person picks it up and throws it to a place where it does not bother anybody. But it is something completely different if a mighty rock, which have rolled down a mountain and has blocked a narrow path and thereby separates people from people, neighbors from neighbors, parents from their children, brothers from brothers and sisters from sisters! Ah, then the whole society will meet to discuss what should be done; since the path must again made passable! Here, however, it concerns the most important moment of our lives, for which we are all

have undertaken this very far and highly difficult trip!

[7] Are we at the right place according to your visions, we have won everything, what the pointing proofs will show; should we however still be far away from it, we must either return home empty handed or continue with our journey, once we have paid the good innkeeper for what we have consumed. Just speak frankly, if you have any proofs in your hands for that, what you have said about this person and what are these proofs!”

28. OUBRATOUVISHAR TRIES TO CONVINCHE HIS PEOPLE OF THE DIVINITY OF JESUS

[1] Says Oubratouvisnar: “Do you think that I am more gullible than you are? O, there you are greatly mistaken about me! Haven’t you seen the proofs this exceedingly beautiful youth, apparently a spirit from heaven, has given me in response to all my doubts, upon only a slightest sign from the Lord?”

[2] Says the twenty: “We saw all kind of things and also overheard here and there the one or other word, however, could not decipher any meaning from it and even less find any connection; since this table is too far away from the main table!”

[3] Say the new arrivals: “We indeed arrived in a somewhat miraculous manner at this second for us empty standing table, in the moment when you bowed deeply before this Lord and came back to us, and therefore could impossibly know anything about what you have negotiated with this dearest youth! Therefore speak what you know and have seen, and we immediately will recognize where we are standing!”

[4] The leader said: “Very well, then listen to me once more: All of you know about my latest finding in a ditch full of rocks. I wanted to bring it along when we departed and give it in Memphis to the governor as a quite beautiful present; during our departure I forgot about it completely, only remembered it only later, and what was found, wrapped in linen, was therefore left in a corner of my hut, covered by a pumpkin bowl. When I

demanded proof, just as you have demanded it from me, this marvelous youth reminded me about the finding which I forgot at home and described exactly to me where and when I have found this beautiful stone, where I have hidden it in my hut, and to whom I wanted to give it as a present.

[5] Friends and dear brothers! This truly had to appear to me most strange and surprised me to the highest degree! How could this youth know about a secret, which was lying so far away from here, hidden in a deepest corner of my hut?

[6] Friends and brothers, to know this, it requires more than all wisdom of all people! For me this would already be sufficient proof, since I can understand, what in a most fundamental wise case is possible for a person to know! But the youth, upon receiving a sign from the Lord at the table there, did not left it at that, but asks me if I would wish that he brings this said find from the hut in Nouabia, to here! This proposal had to surprise me to the highest degree, and I accepted the proposal of the dear youth.

[7] You now would assume that the youth would have required me to wait for a while? O, certainly not! In the same moment he handed me first the stone and immediately afterwards also the pumpkin bowl, with which the beautiful find was covered in the deepest corner of my hut, and thereafter it was explained to me where this beautiful stone was coming from!

[8] So that you do not think or accuse me of being gullible, have a look at this stone and this pumpkin bowl, if it is not the same as I have showed to all of you at home! And here also my servant knows where in my hut I have kept it! What are you say to this? Can this also be done by even the most famous magician in Cahiro? (Kahi roug = the horn, which was regarded holy, of one of the biggest bulls of this region) – I have spoken; now it is again your turn!”

[9] Say now all: “If so, which nobody of us doubt, than heil to us all, since here the most unbelievable becomes the most enlivening and clearest truth! Hale us and our country and all, who are waiting at home for us with great longing; since also

under their black skin it soon should become sunshine bright!

[10] But now tell us, how can you explain this to yourself, that this person at the same time can be the highest God-being, of which the whole of infinity is filled with, and who effects, guides, maintains and nourishes everything and everywhere in an almighty powerful manner. Where in him is there room for such everlasting unlimited wisdom and such almighty will power?! Here, just like us, only a limited person, and there the most unlimited highest power effective in the whole of infinity with the highest insight and wisdom; here and at all countless points of the whole earth, just as the furthest depths of the infinitive creation, equally seeing, knowing, feeling, calculating and performing with never weakening, everlasting strength and power?! Do you comprehend this inconceivable possibility?"

[11] Says the leader: "I surely do not grasp this fully; but I also do not understand, just as you are, how this youth there could have brought the forgotten stone to me within the quickest moment! Let us therefore be patient in all humility and true love for this only One, and there will be more light given to us!"

[12] With that all for the time being are content, deep in thought, and are waiting for what else will come.

29. SPIRITUAL ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF THE BLACK PEOPLE

[1] Says Cyrenius to Me: "Lord, I would not have expected so much wisdom and perfect clear reasoning from these Moors; already the many knowledge and wondrous experiences they have, are really surprising me! The governor from Memphis, by name Justus Platonicus, is known to me as a very wise man; but that he is familiar with all the old Egyptian mysteries, I surely did not know!

[2] That he always was a strong philosopher, I know. As a son of a highly respected house in Rome and rich like Krösus, already during his youth he became familiar with the Greek and Egyptian philosophers and made Egypt the culmination of all

his studies. Ten years he spent in the land of the old wise and was taught everything. With an accompanying document from my brother, Caesar Augustus, in hand, all mysteries from the beginning to the end had to be revealed to him, and this is how he came to his current wisdom. And because he was so thoroughly knowledgeable in all Egyptian affairs, already Augustus appointed him more a civil- rather than a military governor in Memphis in Upper Egypt. There is some military in Memphis under the command of Justus Platonicus, but he is not a general.

[3] That he is a great scholar, I know; but that he now became also a wise man and actually a priest, I of course did not know! From now on I have to think higher of him; since through his troubles with the Moors, he acquired a lot of merit with me. He would be exceedingly happy, if he could be here! What would be Your opinion about this my Justus Platonicus? How does he as a heathen, including me, relate to the kingdom of God on earth?"

[4] I said: "Why do you ask about this? Justus is a man according to My heart, he loves God above all and his fellowmen more than himself; and who does this, is already in My kingdom, irrespective if Jew or heathen! I say to you, that I would more easily get along with him, than with all of you, but you are also alright for Me! However, to preserve My word, nobody is more suitable than these blacks; since what they have understood properly, stays pure and unchanged like a cut diamond. Everybody can vouch for them, that this My teaching will after two-thousand years be as pure as they have received it from Me!

[5] These kind of black people have the peculiar property, to keep a teaching or custom for thousand and more years completely pure, as if they have received it in the very beginning. They will not take anything away or add anything to it; but all this is not an indication that they are more advanced than you white people, however, as descendants of Cain they are standing on a lower level and it is very hard for them to

reach the childhood of God, since they are pure planetary people belonging to this earth. They are pure earthly creatures, equipped with reason, mind and conscience, but with a lesser free will than you white people.

[6] However, the lesser free will they have, are a lot firmer than your totally free will! What they want, they put into action, even if it takes to level mountains! During the course of the day they will provide us with some examples of their firm will, which will amaze you! However, that they in all their doings are more unchangeable than the descendants of Seth, is already testified by their forms.

[7] See, the leader is apparently the oldest among them, and his disciple is twenty-eight years younger than he! Look at both of them and see whether according to their outer appearance the one looks only one year younger than the other; they resemble each other like twin brothers! It will be very difficult for you to judge their age. The same goes for their natural strength and cheerfulness. The seventy year old jumps in competition with a youth of seventeen years!

[8] You whites are often become ill, and your skin is subject to all kind of sicknesses; however, they, as long as they stay with their natural food, do not know any bodily illnesses. Most of them die of old age weakness. But just like their outer physical appearance stays unchanged compared to yours, so is also their inner soul character completely different and many times firmer than yours; however, nevertheless, regarding the full development of their spirit, they will therefore make much lesser progress than you, because they nearly lack the flexibility in their will completely. Their will can also be bent to some extend; but it always requires a lot of seriousness and hard work and patience.

[9] However, the supremeness of the soul and the spirit in it, does not lie in the so to speak more animal-like firmness of the will, but in the soul's property of easy recognition, whereby it quickly grasps and understands the light of the truth, and in the more easily flexible will, so that the soul

sees the true and good and also grasps this quickly with the will and turns it into a deed, since without it no recognition would be of any use to a soul.”

30. THE DIFFERENCES IN CLIMATE AND RACE ON EARTH

[1] (The Lord:) “See, from now on these people will come into countries of awakened and developed nations and will see the agriculture, wine culture and large cities with the most beautiful palaces! But if you after a thousand, also two-thousand years could see them again, they would still live in the same hut and not be able to build themselves a proper house of wood, and even less so of bricks.

[2] We do not want to deny them the ability for it, they can quite easily learn the art of building; but they will lack the easy flexible spirit of enterprise, which is necessary for every person to execute any kind of work!

[3] Therefore the trip to here was for them since ancient mankind, one of the most gigantic undertakings; for you this would only be a joke! It is quite a distance to them, and this country’s heat makes travelling quite difficult; but for the physical composition of these people, the heat can reach a considerable degree, until they really start to experience heat. They have a much more sluggish blood, which contains very little iron, and as such their blood is thicker and more gall-like than this of whites and requires a lot more heat before becoming properly liquid.

[4] In a severe winter, like in the northern countries of our Ouran, these people would feel quite uncomfortable. In the first winter their skin would burst, since their blood which is too thick, would not flow properly in their outer body parts, which would lead to stoppages, which under strong pressure of the vessels would make them burst, entailing bleeding and considerable pain as a result. However heat, nearly making a black stone glowing, does not affect them too much. To the

contrary, however, if a real north Scythian would come to Nouabia, and if he would go there during high summer, he would perish within a few days and therefore die quite soon.

[5] Now of course you think and say in your heart: ‘Must there be so many temperature gradations on earth? Couldn’t it be equally cold or warm everywhere?’ If you would be more familiar with the ball figure of the earth, as it is the case now, although you have been taught by Me about the form of the earth when I was a tender child, you would not have thought about this question!

[6] The different temperatures are an inevitable result of the ball round shape of the earth. The round form, however, is necessary, because with every other form the light of the sun could impossibly be distributed so effectively like with the very ball form, otherwise the earth had to be illuminated by three suns, namely one each over the poles and one over the equator! But who could then firstly endure the heat on earth, what would happen to the strengthening night of all creatures, and secondly what would happen to the movement of the earth, if it would depend on the equally powerful attraction of three equally large suns?

[7] I have explained to you and others, how big the sun is and must be, and how small the earth in comparison! It must circle the sun in a corresponding distance and speed, otherwise it would fall into the same or when having an excessive speed, would fly into infinity. In the first case the earth would nearly dissolve in an instant in the extreme light intensity of the outer atmosphere of the sun, into its primordial state or into the primordial spirits caught in its matter; in the second case it would freeze to a most hard lump of ice! In both cases any flesh life on earth would be unthinkable.

[8] From this you can see, how according to My order, one necessity leads to another, and that on this earth a constant temperature from pole to pole can impossibly take place, however, it is still necessary, so that the earth as far as possible can be populated everywhere, so that the freer becoming souls

going forth from the pre-creatures, can enter a body corresponding to their nature. What else can be done than bodily place such people in such hot regions of the earth, whose nature can accommodate such hot weather, and for the colder weathers, those whose natural composition can to some extent live and cultivate the still so cold regions.

[9] If you can comprehend this to some extent, you will understand, why in the hot Central Africa the previously characteristic described people, had to be black and had to be of a very own composition of heart. Tell Me, if you have understood this well!”

[10] Says Cyrenius: “O Lord, I’m also now completely in order regarding this highly salutary teaching for me; since I can see now that all world arrangement is most wise and most effective, and that everything must be precisely as it is and can never be otherwise! Therefore to You, God and Lord only, all honor, all love and all praise; since the whole earth and all heavens are full of Your love and wisdom!

[11] However, what will You, o Lord, further undertake with the blacks? Because they do not look completely in order; I notice this from their deep thinking behavior.

[12] Their leader has introduced Your Godhead to them in a truly convincing manner, and the story about the transport of the big diamond had initially stunned them; but now they are directing all kind of questions to his conscience, and one who turned around a few times to look at us, just now has asked the leader, if he not in all secrecy has brought the diamond and the pumpkin bowl along himself, to mislead them in a miracle-like manner. What these blacks still will come up with! They will have to be convinced by an even bigger miracle! The good leader apparently has his hands full with them, what I notice rather well!”

[13] I said: “Only a little more patience, until they start to ferment properly, only then we will come to aid the leader; since with them everything goes much slower than with us! In addition, for the first time they now have received completely

foreign food and wine, and for the moment this makes them even slower to comprehend, than before. But it is good that it is like this, otherwise it would not be so easy to convince them about something, which is still too much contrary to the concepts of God which they had absorbed in Memphis.

[14] It is impossible for them to bring the infinity of God under one roof with My personality; but once they are properly fermented, they will quite easily and soon accept it! Meanwhile, however, their leader is working with them regarding their suspicion about his miracle deception, what is also right; since whoever raises a loose suspicion about a true miracle, should also receive a real punishment by the rod! The more these blacks are now punished and humiliated with words, the firmer and more easily they will remain for us forever!”

31. SLOW AND FAST UNDERSTANDING OF THE TRUTH

[1] (The Lord:) “However, this is an old experience that people, who easily accept something without being tanned properly beforehand, also easily let go again of the easily accepted matter, while people who accept and comprehend a teaching through a lot of suffering, does not that easily let go of it again.

[2] O, there are those, who have quite good talents and in addition have also other abilities! They quite well grasp and understand everything quickly and easily; but when the time comes for the necessary trials, they think about their worldly advantages, are afraid to sacrifice too much and try as far as possible to forget and get rid of those spiritual things, which, although tangible true, does not yield them any interest in this world. Such people look like nearly completely transparent dayflies, which play the whole beautiful day long in the light and are full of life as they are illuminated and glowing; but then comes life’s trying night, and their light and glowing comes to an end and also their light!

[3] Therefore those people, who in the beginning accept any higher truth with somewhat more difficulty, are more suitable

for the kingdom of God than the easy-acceptor; since they then keep what have been accepted faithfully and life-warm, while the easy-acceptors are playing with the light of heavens in the same manner as the dayflies with sunlight, but subsequently do not have a greater use of the light of heaven than the dayflies from sunlight.

[4] There are, however, also exist people, who accept the truth easily, also keep it and shine forth like bright stars at night, and produce for themselves and others great use; but these people are few and are rare.

[5] However, all these Moors belong to the slow-understanding; but once they have grasped it, it belongs to them, and they will shine forth and forth in their latest descendants, like the stars in the Orion and like Sirjezc (Sirius) in the great wideness.

[6] The thorough acceptance and the right understanding of My teaching is nearly the same as the acquisition of great wealth: Who came in a very easy way to great wealth, will also quickly and soon be finished with it; since he never was accustomed to privation, and he never tried to save. Once he came into great wealth by inheritance or other easily achieved profit, he will not respect the inheritance; since he thinks and also feels it, that great wealth can be easily acquired. But who acquired considerable wealth by the diligence of his hands, knows all the difficulties and hard work and knows how many drops of sweat each groschen has cost him; therefore he respects his hard acquired wealth and surely does not wastes and squanders it in a frivolous manner.

[7] It is the same with spiritual treasures. Who acquires them easily, nearly pays no attention to them, since he thinks and feels it in himself that he either could never lose them, or, even if he would lose some or even all of it, that he quite easily could get it back again. But this is not so; since who loses something spiritual, will not acquire the lost something as easy as the first time.

[8] Since matter takes immediately the place of the lost spiritual, which is a judgment, it cannot be pushed out that easily as in the

beginning. Since like all spiritual becomes continuously more spiritual and freer, also the physical becomes more physical, worldlier and fuller of judgment and death; for who is stuck in the judgment once and is tied up in its will and recognition, returns freedom to himself quite difficult or even never.

[9] Who once has My word, must keep it and stay in it unchangingly not only by knowledge, but mainly through deeds and works according to the word; because all knowledge and faith without works, is as good as nothing and can have no value for life!

[10] What use is it for someone who wants to undertake a trip to a destination of which he only knows the name but does not know the way to get there, and someone knowledgeable about the way, gives him a detailed description, but he does not walk the route, turns around and walks off into the opposite direction?! Will he ever reach his destination? I said: He can go where he wants, but will never reach his place of destination; since where you want to go, you also have to walk in that direction!

[11] These Moors are for certain the most knowledgeable people in the whole world regarding the description of the earth! However, without the governor Justus Platonius, they never would have found the way to here according to their knowledge; but after the governor has described to them the way to here accurately, they travelled exactly as he has described, and their current presence here is sufficient proof, that they have executed the instructions of the governor very precisely, and this required a steadfast firm will, which is in a high degree inherent to them. However, who wants something really hard, he surely also executes what he wants.

[12] Who therefore has My word and My teaching and acts with a firm will accordingly, must reach his destination, and nothing can stop him; however, who acts a little according to My word and at the same time does what the loose world desires, is like a person who walks half the distance to a place, and when reaching the halfway point, turns around and walks

same way back.

[13] He also resembles a servant who wants to serve two masters, which are opposed to each other. Will he get his work done with the two mutually hostile masters? Can he love both, even only ostensibly? What will the two masters do, once they find out that the double servant is equally loyal to both of them? Will not the one just as the other say to the servant: 'O you joker of a servant, how can you love my worst enemy the same as me?! Serve only me, or resign from my service!' Since nobody can truthfully serve two masters at the same time; he must adhere to the one and despise the other. And see, such a loose and rogue-like servant will finally be chased away by both masters and will find it quite difficult to obtain a third employment and it will be with him like sitting on the floor between two chairs.

[14] That these Moors do not want to serve two, but only one master, you can easily deduce from the way the leader is fighting his colleagues, to whom the words of the governor still mean too much and cannot that easily be removed from their hearts!

[15] The only thing, what the governor has told them out of Moses about a divine personality, is a clue and a bridge, on which they can be brought to Me. And it is on this bridge on which the leader is primarily trying to convince the stubborn. If I do not send him the angel to assist, he will not be finished with them in a years time; however, I now will send the angel to him and the case will present itself!"

[16] Says Cyrenius: "O Lord, then I would like to be closer, to be able to listen to the negotiations more clearly!"

[17] I said: "It will not be necessary; since the wind will bring everything to our ears!"

32. RAPHAEL CONVINCES THE BLACK PEOPLE OF THE DIVINITY OF THE LORD

[1] Thereupon I call the angel and say to him loudly for the sake of the table companions: “Raphael, Oubratouvishar has now returned to the right point with his companions again, and you can stop the quarrel with one blow! They are now well prepared, to accept his opinion and insight about Me, if he can proof it to them, that the stone really was brought by you from Nouabia to here. Go then and bring to each one from his hut what he wants, and the whole quarrel issue will be completely resolved!

[2] Since these firm willed, but otherwise difficult understanding people, must be converted by a miracle, because the word possesses too little persuasive power for them. These people are also not harmed too much by a miracle like you and especially some Jews; since they, as people of nature, can perform considerable miracles themselves by their firm believe and by their unbending will, what they of course regard as quite a natural thing. Of this we will be convinced later. A great miracle is regarded by them only as half, and therefore they can without any harm be prepared by miracles. Therefore go to them! What you have to say and do lies already in you.”

[3] With these instructions now known to us all, the angel goes to the table where the blacks, becoming even more lively by the enjoyment of the wine, are holding their quite loud dispute. Once there, he says with a penetrating loud voice: “Why do you accuse this your greatest friend and benefactor, to whom you owe everything good, as if he wanted to deceive you and force a false faith onto you?! Why are you distrusting the miracle which I have performed on instructions of the Lord to convince him, as if I was ordered by him as a crook, to assist him, to deceive you! What proofs do you want, which are sufficient to fight the doubt-addiction in you, to convince you? Must I bring something from your huts to here? Ask and I will do it!”

[4] Upon this short and energetic speech they became absolutely

quiet and out of fear did not know what to do.

[5] But the leader said: “This is God’s help! It will justify me before your already quite strong accusations! Ask and convince yourself; since nothing else can break your great foolishness!”

[6] Thereupon the one who doubted him most, got up and said: “In my hut is a hidden treasure; except for me and my wife, who is here, nobody knows about it. Bring it here and I will fully believe you!”

[7] Said the angel: “How long should it take that I bring the treasure to here, which you have wrapped in linen and reeds and have buried in a corner of your hut towards sunrise, two shoes deep in the sand, at a place where outside the hut a large palm tree is standing? It consists of a thirty pound heavy and absolutely pure lump of gold. Tell me the time!”

[8] Here the skeptic’s eyes widened and he said: “But in all heavens name, how possibly could you, dearest boy, know this so precisely? Already with that you have destroyed my doubt; now everything is clear to me, whatever our leader and elder has said about this young man over there! But with all this, this matter becomes terribly strange! If beyond all doubt the fullness of the primordial everlasting spirit of God resides in this Man, how can we survive in front of Him! Our doubt must have offended Him to the highest degree? O, o we are all lost!”

[9] Says the angel: “O certainly not, you are all saved now! But now determine the time, in which I should bring the treasure here!”

[10] Says the skeptic: “O loveliest, this is not necessary anymore for the sake of my disbelieve; but if you miraculously want to bring it here, take it easy! If it has a particular value for someone here, he can have it in exchange for some other useful tools; since it is of no use to me anyhow! It is beautiful and has places which are shining brightly in the sun; and if you look at it very carefully, it consists of all kinds of signs, which are visible on the surface. Some are dark and without shine, but some are shining brightly in the sun. Therein lays for me the actual value of the considerable large and very compact lump. If you,

loveliest, most beautiful youth, want to bring it here, you do not have to rush with all your wondrous strength!”

[11] Says the angel: “Look at me! In this moment I fetch your treasure; count the moments I will require to go there and back again!”

[12] The sceptic and his colleagues are observing the angel with sharp eyes, to see, when he will leave and when he will return.

[13] However, the angel does not leave but instead asks the skeptic: “Now, did you notice my absence?”

[14] Says the skeptic: “No; since until now you are still standing like rock at the same place!”

[15] Says the angel: “O, certainly not; just look down at your feet where your treasure is lying completely undamaged!”

[16] The skeptic looks under the table and his recognizable treasure is lying in its unscathed wrapping at his feet! The skeptic is frightened so much about it, that his otherwise red lips are getting white and he starts to tremble.

[17] Also the others are making strangely affected faces about this appearance and shout: “But for the sake of the Lord’s power! What is this, how can this be?! You loveliest did not leave your place for one shortest moment! How is this possible?”

[18] Says the angel: “With God everything is possible, and you can deduce from this, how God as Lord, although He is present here like any other person, guides, rules and maintains with His most infinitive will-power the whole of infinity, and that there forever can never be anything hidden from His omni seeing eyes, about which He does not know about in the greatest detail!

[19] That the everlasting spirit of God has taken on the flesh on this earth and personally Himself has become a person, is the result of His exceedingly great love for you people on this earth, and thereby also for the people of all the countless other world-earths, to be a God and Father that you can feel, see and speak to in all love for all everlasting times! Since He as God is the mightiest and purest love, no person and no angel can approach Him in any other manner, except through love only.

[20] If you want to come to Him, you must first love Him above all and among each other as true brothers and faithful sisters; without such love any true approach to Him is as good as impossible! But now, you frightened here, pick up your treasure and place it on the table and look at it if it is the right one!”

33. DONATION OF THE TREASURES TO CYRENIUS

[1] Here, the Moor, recovering from his first fright, bends down and placed the quite heavy lump on the table, undid the reed and the linen and within a short time the gold lump was lying naked on the table; and many went and looked at this rich treasure. Also our Judas Iscariot could not tame his curiosity, looked at the treasure and regretted secretly very much that he was not the owner of it.

[2] When the treasure had been looked at and admired enough, the Moor asked the angel, who would be most worthy to whom he could give this lump as a present, because he did not want to carry it all the way back home.

[3] And the angel pointed to Cyrenius and said: “See there, to the right of the Lord sits the upper governor of Rome! He is in charge of Asia and a large part of Africa; the whole of Egypt resorts under him, and therefore also the governor of Memphis! To him give this treasure! Also you, Oubratouvisar, would do better to hand over your stone to this upper governor than to the governor in Memphis, who does value this kind of treasures only very little or not at all! – By the way, this is only my advice, and you can do as you please!”

[4] Says the leader: “Your wise advice is already a command to me, what I also would execute at any price, since you only can give me the most wise and best advice anyway!”

[5] With that both get up – the skeptic with the gold lump and the leader with his large diamond – and go to Cyrenius.

[6] When arriving there, the leader says: “Earlier I did not know who you are. I also did not ask for anyone else, then only the Lord, since I thought by myself: ‘Only one can be the Lord and

ruler, and all the others are his servants and attendants!’ But now this shining white wondrous youth told me, that you, earthly seen, are a great lord and ruler, and therefore I and this my colleague have according to the wise advice of this loveliest most wondrous youth, freely decided, to give to you our so miraculously brought treasure for your disposal, for which you nevertheless can give us some necessary and useful house tools, so that also we can furnish our houses to produce bread, which tastes so good.

[7] Our hacking and cutting tools are bad and getting blunt quite easily; since they are made from wood and animal bones. In Memphis we have learned about all kinds of cutting tools, which even stones cannot make blunt so easily, and those tools we could use better than our yellow shining metal, which is soft and useless! – Therefore, be so good and accept these two pieces!”

[8] Says Cyrenius: “Good, friends, I accept these two exceedingly precious pieces from you; however not for me, but on behalf of these impoverished Galilee people, who are already in considerable arrear with Rome regarding their taxes! With these two pieces Rome is in anyway covered for ten consecutive years with taxes for this country in advance, and the country can recover during this time period.

[9] If you return home again, I will take care that a just amount of all kinds of the most necessary and useful tools and appliances will be given to you, and if you wanted to place yourself voluntary under Roman protection, you would from year to year be issued with new tools and appliances! Otherwise you had to at least every few years issue yourself with it in Memphis, of course by trading for those metals!”

[10] Says the leader: “To decide on that, we had to hold a general peoples council, which is always a difficult matter with us, because our country is very large and the inhabitants are living in many and often quite difficult accessible corners, and therefore it is very difficult to call a national council. The better will be, however, that from time to time we will collect what we

need most in Memphis.

[11] Your Roman laws might be quite good; however, they would not be suitable for our land and people. The governor in Memphis has already made the same proposal to us, which we could not accept just like we cannot accept yours now. Even if you could penetrate our country, it would serve you no purpose! You would wander around in the glowing hot desert and perish by the hundreds and would still find no people, but find hundreds of herds of lions, panthers and tigers who would tear you to pieces; you also would not survive the fight with the snakes and adders!”

[12] Says Cyrenius: “How are you then getting along with so many tearing beasts? Are they in all seriousness not harming you?”

[13] Says the leader: “Just now you have heard from the mouth of the youth and from the most holy mouth of the Lord himself, how we are created! How can you beyond that, also ask me about it? It is, like the Lord Himself has said about us; how, whereby and why, we do not know ourselves! I therefore ask you, to spare these kinds of questions; since the answers would not be of any use to you!”

[14] Hereupon both bowed deeply before us and returned immediately to their companions and told them everything what they had talked with Me.

34. THE ORIGIN OF THE TEMPLE OF ABU SIMBEL, THE SPHINX AND THE PILLARS OF MEMNON

[1] But his companions said: “How could you have talked to the Lord, when you have not spoken one word with Him?!”

[2] The leader said: “Here, where He is present, everything goes forth from Him, and we therefore have only to do with Him, irrespective if we negotiate with His disciples!” – With this answer they were content and said nothing more.

[3] However, some said to the angel: “Listen, you wonder boy, wouldn’t you also bring the quite interesting treasures of the

five of us to here, which we keep hidden in our huts?”

[4] Said the angel: “Just pick them up from your feet under the table, and we shall see what it is!”

[5] Here the five Moors look underneath the table and to their biggest surprise they see the only too well known, considerable large bundles, place the same on the table, and another four considerable lumps of Gold appear, which together weigh over hundred pounds; however, in the fifth bundle seven rather large river stones appear, which Marcus who was standing next to the angel regarded as completely worthless.

[6] But the angel said: “Just wait, soon you will discover that these seven stones, earthly seen, have the greatest and incalculable value! Just bring a hard, iron hammer, and we will examine them!”

[7] Marcus hurries, since full of curiosity himself, to his workshop and soon appears again with a hard, iron hammer and hands it to the angel. He takes such a stone into his hand and hits it carefully several times, whereupon the whitish, silica-like crust comes loose, and a pearl the seize of a human head appears, leaving everybody absolutely speechless.

[8] On the surface of this wonder pearl were hieroglyphics and other signs engraved. Amongst others there was also a quite good drawing of the temple *Ja bu sim bil* during the building period, namely when the four gigantic figures after a hundred-and-seventy years work full of sweat and other sacrifices were completed and people still were working lively at the facades and through sculpturing engraving gigantic scriptures and other signs into the flat, large surfaces, and when at the same time they were starting to cut open the gate in the middle between the gigantic figures. Who could decipher these signs and scriptures which were clearly visible, had the origin of this temple in front of him and also the reason, why it was built by the ancient Egyptians, namely near the Nile river.

[9] This pearl therefore does not only have an incalculable value as a giant among its kind, but also a historic value. At the same time it also originates from a time period of the earth, when it

still took many thousands of years, until the first human in flesh stepped onto this earth.

[10] At the earth's time, when such gigantic shell animals lived in the sea, huge waves of the world's sea were still covering the largest parts of the low lying countries of Africa. The ancient Egyptians found the mother-shell during the foundation diggings of the first pyramids, and when they opened the mother-shell they found these seven pearls in it, of which the angel has now freed one of them from its crust.

[11] Naturally, the angel now was stormed with questions, and he explained the circumstances as it was given here in all shortness.

[12] When Raphael finished the of course only superficial explanation of the first revealed pearl, he said: "What you need to know for the time being, I have briefly explained to you as clear as possible; let us now move on to the exposure of the second pearl, which is somewhat smaller than the first!"

[13] Here the angel took the second pearl and freed it in the same way from its crust as the first one. It also was full of signs and scriptures. On one of the smoothest surfaces the little temple of *Ja bu sim bil* was engraved and next to it a head, similar to this of the great Sphinx. And the angel was again stormed, to explain all these signs and inscriptions.

[14] And he (the angel) said: "Friends, without the full awakening of the spirit in the soul none of the currently living people will be able to interpret everything, what is written and drawn on this pearl!"

[15] Although this pearl is as old as the first and largest pearl, it has only been engraved and in-scripted a hundred years later, namely during the time of completion of the smaller rock temple, in which, however, the inner of the larger temple was not fully completed. Therefore the smaller temple is here presented as fully completed.

[16] The head presents the already seventh shepherd-king of the time, who gave himself the name Shivinz (wrongly 'Sphinx'), the lively, the entrepreneur. He nearly reached the age of three-

hundred years, and his head was colossally sculptured from a large granite rock, which still today is quite well preserved and visible.

[17] This Shivinz introduced large improvements in the schools, as well as in cattle breeding and in agriculture. However, he also enjoyed from his people a nearly divine worshipping. The signs and scriptures indicate the very many good things and improvements, which he introduced to this country with his extremely active spirit.

[18] He did not started to chisel the large temple, since this was done by two of his ancestors who were very much devoted to the invisible spirit of God; out of great respect he had them chiseled from rock in a colossal seize not far from the great temple in a sitting position on a beautiful plain near the Nile, as an everlasting memory. And since the two had no name and out of modesty did not want to carry a name, he gave them a name and called them ‘The Nameless’ (Me maine oni, = badly translated in later times: ‘Memnon’), of which both picture columns are still quite well preserved and visible until this day.”

[19] Said the leader: “Yes, yes, we have seen and admired all this! But how old would all these extraordinary things be?”

[20] Says the angel: “Near to three-thousand years, and the next three-thousand years will not completely eradicate their tracks! – Just wait a little, we will now reveal the third pearl; on its surface we will next to the two ancestors of Shivinz, already as statues, still see other major events engraved, which will make you think a lot!”

35. THE 7 GIANTS AND THE SARCOPHAGUSES

[1] Here Raphael took the third pearl in his hand and freed it from its crust.

[2] When it was naked, Raphael drew the attention of the knowledge thirsty and rather burning onlookers to the quite good engraved Memnon statues and said: “See, there they are already, the two Nameless! But there above you can see, as in front of the Nameless, seven gigantic figures of clothed humans, and around them you see a lot of very small figures of people! What has the wise Shivinzi, who himself has drawn all of the pearls, wanted to express thereby?”

[3] Listen! It is the same time about 107 years before the first of the two nameless ancestors, when a large planet in deep space was destroyed into many pieces by the permission of the Lord. Many gigantic large people lived on it.

[4] By the sudden, by nobody foreseen destruction, although it was often announced to these people, it happened that seven of the mentioned earth-people fell in upper Egypt on several open places of the large country and by their heavy fall caused a very strong earth tremor.

[5] This people rain lasted more than 10 days, this means from the first fall to the last. The inhabitants of this country had to endure a lot of fear and fright during that time; especially at night they were frightened that one of the giants would fall onto them and terribly smash them. Therefore they looked with fearing hearts continuously to the sky, if not another uninvited guest from the clouds would pay them an unwelcomed visit.

[6] For nearly ten years they had posted permanent guards, to see, if not another gruesome traveler would come from the air; but after ten days there was no one to see, and in time the souls of the people calmed down again and they even dared to go to the large, completely dried out gigantic corpses, which lay spread out up to one quarter day travel from each other.

[7] The wise among those ancient Egyptians speculated quite correctly that it were giants from a large and far away country

who were punished by the spirit of God, because they sinned against God, and God in His just rage had picked them up and thrown them here, to show the Egyptians, that He does not spare even the mighty giants, if they acted against His will. In short, they finally started to burn these giants piece by piece, and after fifty years not one sign could be found anywhere of them.

[8] However, what the Egyptians remembered about these gigantic human figures, was this, that from these giants stuck in their memory they went over to a colossal sense for everything, of which their first sculptures was more than a tangible proof.

[9] In the temple of *Ja bu sim bil*, in each of the three divisions, seven giants were illustrated as so to speak bearers of the roof, which means chiseled into stone, namely in the specific clothes in which the travelers from the air have arrived; and the Egyptians who previously walked around almost completely naked, started to dress themselves in such manner, which is the reason that one until this day sees all the old leftovers dressed in this manner. Their mummies and sarcophagi are full of this kind of decorations.”

[10] Asks the leader, what it was that the old Egyptians in all reality meant under the sarcophagi and why they had called the large and also smaller very massive coffins like that.

[11] Said Raphael: “This you will hear right now and very thoroughly! You know, that it is in large parts of this country not that easy to just bury the corpses, since in the dry ground a body decomposes very slowly and therefore cannot be destroyed by rotting. In the more moist nearness of the Nile one also did not wanted to bury the dead, for the very wise reason not to pollute the water of the stream. To let lay the corpses on the surface or throw them to the wild animals for food, especially the old Egyptians were too much human and respected even the corpses of their dead brothers too much, than to cause them such disrespectfulness. However, what else could they do?

[12] See, they had a very clever idea! From stone they chiseled, partly very large and later also very small coffins, in which

there was comfortably space to the most one, two or three corpses. Each coffin was provided with a relatively large and heavy lid. When in such coffin one or more corpses had been placed, after they had been rubbed properly with *mum* (Muma, also mummy, = earth resin, earth balsam), the lid was made glowing hot and the coffin was then covered so to speak forever with this glowing hot lid. By that process the corpses completely dried out and with very hot lids sometimes even charred or completely burnt up to ash.

[13] However, in the bigger towns and societies there were also general coffins, which were opened every seven years. They were then again filled with corpses and completely covered, and on top of the lid a proper fire was made, whereby the corpses of course turn to ash. If such a coffin was full of ash, it was not opened anymore, but was left standing as a honorable monument in memory of the temporariness of everything earthly.

[14] In time vaults and pyramids were build around and above it, which is the reason why one still finds today in the vicinity of the pyramids many such coffins in sometimes very narrow and sometimes very wide vaults (Kai-tu comba, which means hidden chamber). These now clearly described the coffins which were then called sarcophagi, because according to the tongue of the ancient Egyptians, sarko means 'glowing' and vaga (vascha) means 'heavy lid'.

[15] There you have your sarcophagi; but now let us continue with the third pearl and we will see what it will reveal to us!"

36. THE CONSTELLATIONS ON THE FOURTH PEARL

[1] Carefully the angel picks it up with his hand and chips off the crust.

[2] Here the leader asks the angel and says: “O wonder boy, you service finger of the Most Highest, do not be annoyed when I bother you with a question! See, with your otherwise miraculous power I’m bothered by the hammer! Is it absolutely necessary or are you using it only to reveal yourself to us in a greater natural manner, so that we can observe and listen to you in a more fearless and calmer way?”

[3] Says the angel: “Not any of the two, I only do this, to show you how to handle such stones when you come across similar events, to expose them should you again find any! Since especially in upper- and middle Egypt these encrusted stones occur in large numbers, namely widely spread in the desert; of course there will only be few such pearls left among them. However, also the other stones are decorated with all kinds of signs, scriptures and pictures; since the old Egyptians for a very long time did not yet have any paper to write on. Therefore they used stone plates, to initially engrave with bones and later with iron styluses all kinds of things they wanted to memorize.

[4] The very first recordings did of course indicated nothing else than the very simple events of their herds; but the later ones are containing, like these pearls, great and important events, not only for this large country and nation, but also for the whole earth. Since the Lord wanted it to be a very thorough pre-school for His Coming, which also is the reason why He send His closely chosen nation, the Hebraemites, to a long continuing school in Egypt. And Moses, the great prophet of the Lord, had at the Horn of the Kahi (Kahiro), in Theben (Thebai, also Thebsai, = house of fools, later of course a large, people rich city), in *Kar nag* at Korak and in the oldest cities like Memphis, Diathira (Dia दौरा = place of corvee) and at Elephantine (EL ei fanti = the descendants of the children of God) completed his school and was lead by the spirit of God to a highest

inauguration only at an age of fifty-seven, when fleeing at Madan over the Sues from a cruel Varion (Pharaoh), from where you can read his later history in the scriptures.

[5] In short, Egypt was destined by God to become a pre-school, and the inhabitants of this oldest inhabited land of the earth were already from ancient times onwards gifted with a lot of wisdom and conducted trade with nearly all better nations on earth. You will now understand, how and why especially in this country everything, which can be found, has very often a very deep routed meaning.

[6] And now to our exposed fourth pearl!

[7] There we see several illustrations of hunters with quivers, bows and arrows and a large herd enclosed by lions. This signifies a great battle of the Egyptians with lions, which at that stage attacked in large numbers the fat herds of the Egyptians.

[8] And see, more to the right of this scene you see the pastures already enclosed with walls, and on it are lying heads of bulls, with the horns pointing up, then down and then sideways, all indicating that the herds, before the tremendous enclosure of the large pastures, were always in great danger and were completely defenseless. At each corner of the walls you see a large dog, like ready for fighting, sometimes standing, sometimes lying down; the name which the old Egyptians gave to this watchful animal was Pas, also Pastshier, guardian of the pasture.

[9] Here, still further to the right, you again see the shepherd king Shivinz (Sphinx), at his side a gigantic large dog, and in front of the dog some pieces of the lion. Still to the right, however, a little higher up, we can see the same dog, under it the picture of the sun and the moon. What does this mean?

[10] Listen! Our Shivinz as a king of the shepherds, in fact had one of the largest dogs, and in its presence no lion and no panther was sure of its life. For a long time this dog protected the herds of Shivinz. However, when the dog died of old age, Shivinz determined, out of respect and as a memorial, to always symbolize this animal with a constellation in the southern sky. He gave the constellation the name the Great Dog, who loyally

protected the king's herds for many years. That the king gave his dog a place among the stars, is indicated by the sun and the moon underneath the belly of the dog. Everything, under which sun and moon can be seen, can be found symbolically among the stars as memorial of a great and important event.

[11] Nowadays a very large and watchful dog is – especially in this country where there are nearly no tearing animals – not of any special importance anymore; however, in ancient Egypt, where there were whole herds of tearing beasts and in parts still exist, a large, strong and courageous dog was an exceedingly great necessity. Since firstly such a dog was the most loyal protector of the herds. His maintenance was very easy, since this large dog race fed itself from the uncountable many earth mice, of which this country never had a shortage of; they also ate the large grasshoppers by the thousands per day. Only once per day did they receive some milk, which made, that the dogs remained faithful to the herd.

[12] Together with the great dogs, also a species of smaller dogs were quite well accepted with the ancient Egyptians; their name was Mal pas (small dog). These were the noise makers; Poroshit means according to the old tongue 'sign' or 'noise maker'. If something foreign came close to a house or herd, the small dogs started to bark; this made the large ones attentive, who then filled the area with their immense barking, bringing respect to the wild beasts, whereupon they began to retreat.

[13] Quite often the small dogs were also the guardians of chicken and the brood, for which they have been specifically trained for. All this was the invention of Shivin, who made these birds into useful domestic animals and showed the Egyptians, how good tasting their meat and their grilled and cooked eggs were. In this way he taught this already very large nation of this large country new types of food and new herds, whose roasts and eggs tasted only too well, otherwise there would not have been during later times a proper chicken war, which was even mentioned by the Greek historian Herodot in some mystic manner.

[14] Our ShivinZ, who attached the great dog to the skies, also gave the little dog a place among the stars and gave it the name Porishion (Prozion). Close by you find the old Kokla (hen); later this constellation received the name Peleada, also Peleadza, and under a false legend of the Greek was given the name Pleaden by the Greek.

[15] Here at the very top of the pearl you can also see this quite well engraved, and you can recognize from this how intelligent our ShivinZ was. It was not his major aim to continuously recall to memory of his disciples his dogs and chickens by easily recognizable constellations, but rather to teach them the progress of time by the stars.

[16] It was also ShivinZ who at Diadaira (Diathira) setup the first zodiac (Sa diazc = for the workers), he was the first to invent it at the firmament and gave the constellations their names according to appearances and country events occurring at a particular time, as we will see it soon on the revealed fifth pearl!”

37. DIVISION OF TIME ON THE FIFTH PEARL

[1] (Raphael:) “Just pay attention; there is the fifth pearl! How such ancient relics should be handled and how they should be exposed, I already have shown you, and therefore I’m going to reveal the last three pearls by just using my will power, and see, we already have the fifth pearl revealed in front of us!

[2] See here the zodiac of Diathira before us, drawn on the pearl’s most beautiful and largest surface! There is a colossal temple; 365 most massive columns are carrying an equally massive arch of reddish granite ashlars, constructed most artfully and exceedingly precisely to building practices and very strongly. The highest point on the arch is 66 man heights high. The whole arch has exactly 365 openings, which are build in precisely such a way that during a period of one constellation, under which the sun is present, the light falls precisely at the middle of the day onto the centre point of a column standing

vertically in the centre of the temple. The light coming through the other openings was also falling onto the altar during the different times of the day, but did not pass through the centre point, but one or more degrees sideways.

[3] This most meaningful constructed arch still exists today, although somewhat chewed by the tooth of time, and will still stand for a long time to come and serve the astronomers as a guideline.

[4] You ask, to which actual use did the great ShivinZ build this arch with the greatest effort of the world? Before that there was no defined time keeping. The small change in shorter- or longer days was hardly noticed. The moon was still the most reliable time keeper. In Diathira, as the town where the workers became sluggish due to punishment, it was necessary to have a certain time keeping system during the day as well as night, and for that purpose and for the sake of a more precise order, our ShivinZ made this arch, which, however, took him ten years and one-hundred-thousand workers to complete.

[5] The arch was of course very wide, and for every 30 and 31 round openings the symbol of one of the twelve constellation signs was painted on to it, above which, normally red painting, the constellation was faithfully painted in white on top. You can see here on the pearl the inner of the arch drawn clearly with fine lines, which then have been rubbed with a dark red color, and you can now imagine, what an awakened spirit our ShivinZ was, and what unlimited respect the nations of Egypt had for him! The result of this was as such, that he only had to wave, and hundred thousands of people started to stir with all energy, and the most extraordinary work was raised out of the earth!

[6] The most wise of the nation he made into teachers and priests: established everywhere schools for all kinds of subjects which were useful for the peoples activities. The highest teaching of God, however, could only be achieved in *Kar nag* at Korak and finally in secrecy through many and hard trials at *Ja bu sim bil.*”

[7] Here the old innkeeper Marcus asked the angel, interrupting

his explanation: “Most dearest friend, while you are at it revealing your pearls, couldn’t you also explain to us the strange circumstances about the Sphinx which as half woman and as half animal gave on life and death to the people the famous riddle: namely what animal was it, which walks in the morning on all four, at midday on two and in the evening on three feet? Who couldn’t solve the riddle, was killed by the riddle sphinx; however, who was able to solve it, was allowed to kill the sphinx! – Is anything about this a fact or not?”

38. THE PYRAMIDS, THE OBELISKS AND THE SPHINX

[1] Said Raphael: “Look here, this sixth pearl will answer your question! Here we have it exposed; what do you see at first sight?”

[2] Says Marcus: “There I see again the colossal image of Shivanz and some pyramids; in front of the largest are standing two upside down cone shaped columns, called obelisks, and towards the side of the great pyramid, in reality perhaps a few hundred steps away, what one cannot determine precisely from the picture, there again a quite considerable colossal statue is visible. It has the head of a woman, female hands and a strong, female chest. Where the chest ends at the point of the stomach, a recognizable animal body begins. Behind this strange statue is a far stretched circular wall, enclosing a vast pasture. It appears to form a whole and unified something. What does this mean?”

[3] Says Raphael: “The colossal chest picture is the very Shivanz, which the people, to honor the great, build out of their own initiative by the best chisellers and builders and also to their very own cost. The great pyramid with the two obelisks was a ‘Man, Recognize Yourself’ school. The inner had large chambers and long running passage ways in all directions, in which all kinds of odd facilities were present for the self-recognition and from that the recognition of the Most High Spirit of God. Sometimes the facilities looked quite gruesome; but they rarely missed their objective. The other pyramids are

mainly only signs of those underground places, where there were many sarcophagi, which have been permanently closed off, as was already explained earlier.

[4] During current times, however, there still exist many pyramids and all kind of temples along the exceedingly long Nile valley, which very much later were build during the times of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob by the pharaohs; these are not referred here, only those, which were build under ShivinZ.

[5] Piramidai was the actual ancient name and means: 'Give me wisdom' and the two upside down cones by the name oubeloiska mean: 'the pure searches for the elated, beautiful, pure'. 'Belo' means actually 'white'; but because the completely white color meant for the old Egyptians pure, elated and beautiful, it was also used to indicate the elated, pure and beautiful.

[6] The good effect of such schools soon became known all over, and soon foreigners came to visit such schools, and there were so many, that they could not be accommodated and supplied. Because of that our ShivinZ thought out some means whereby the foreigners could be kept away, so that they did not visited too often the schools established by him. But what was his means?

[7] Here on this pearl you see the half person and half animal statue. It was hollow and inside a person could, by a spiral staircase, get into its head and speak through its downward directed funnel-shaped mouth, loud and clearly, and because of the strong voice it had the appearance as if in all seriousness the colossal statue could talk.

[8] If now the foreigners came there to be accepted to the school, they were directed by a servant of the statue, to stand at a certain place in front of the statue, which was dead on the outside but alive on the inside, namely one by one. There, everyone who wanted to become a disciple of the pyramids received a puzzling question on life and death from ShivinZ. If the ask has solved the riddle, he was accepted, and with admission he was also allowed to ask the statue a counter

question and in case where the statue could not give him a satisfying answer, he was allowed to destroy it and so to speak murder it.

[9] The question, however, was given to the clients three days before to think about; on the third day however, when they received the same question out of the mouth of the statue on life and death, surely nobody dared to, but retreated in all humility, paid the required pre-question fee and travelled to his quite often very far fatherland.

[10] Falling into a later time period, a myth said, that a Greek was successful to solve the old riddle; with hundred-thousand others this is a fable and is without any truth! Since the famous riddle was solved by Moses, however, who did not destroyed the statue, since also this statue, although somewhat chewed up by the tooth of time, can still be seen today.

[11] Of course, the inner structure cannot be found anymore, since it is entirely full of sand and mud; since the Nile severely floods its banks normally every hundred, sometimes also two-hundred years, so that in the narrow valley areas the waves are driven more than thirty ell (1 ell = 1.143m, the translator) above the normal water level. Thereby a lot is laid to waste and made useless, since a huge amount of gravel sand and mud is deposited on top of the earlier most beautiful pastures.

[12] After the time of ShivinZ there were two Nile floods, where the waves went high above the peaks of the pyramids. Such a flood also took place, counted from now on, 870 years ago, whereby the temple of Ja bu sim bil was nearly halfway sanded and silted up, and since that time it was not possible anymore to clean it and other memorials from all the sand and mud. And it is the same with our puzzling statue; on the inside it is full of hardened mud and sand, who nobody can remove anymore! So, my dear Marcus, this is the truth about the puzzling sphinx! – Are you now in the clear about it?”

[13] Said Marcus: “During the course of 2,000 years, did no one have the courage to let the sphinx present him the known riddle at the risk of his life? And if he would have done it, what would

happen to him, if he, quite understandable, could not solve the riddle?”

[14] Said Raphael: “At the spot where the ask was standing, there was a pit installed, by which he quickly would sink into the ground; and once at the bottom, a few servants would have taken him to the school by underground passageways because of his bravery, although he did not solved the riddle correctly, from which he could not get away earlier, other then becoming a perfect person. However, it never came to it; and at the times when the riddle was solved, this ancient facility was to such an extend silted and sanded up, that it became completely useless, and the first shepherd kings and their people were long since defeated by an Phoenician nation to such an extent, that the pharaohs even at the times of Abraham, were already Phoenicians.

[15] Now you also know about this in short, and we now move over to reveal the seventh and last pearl!”

39. THE CONSTELLATIONS OF THE SEVENTH PEARL. DECLINE OF THE EGYPTIAN CIVILIZATION.

[1] (Raphael:) “See, there it is! What do you see on it? You see something, but you don’t know what it is; on this very beautiful pearl all the constellations have been drawn, and rubbed with a brown-red color, and under the crust it stayed preserved until this hour.

[2] We do not learn too much from this pearl which is significant; but we still derive from it, that our Shivinzn knew the stars on the firmament quite well and that he for sure was the first one who arranged the constellations into a certain system. And as he named the zodiac, they are still called the same name today!

[3] Before his reign it looked quite meager with the old Egyptians, regarding making drawings and the subsequent writing, as well as the right recognition of oneself, and even more meager regarding the recognition of God. However, our

Shivinz has with a lot of inexpressibly troubles brought order into all this, and made from the former wild nomadic tribe one of the most educated and wisest nations of the whole earth, what of course produced a lot of envious people in time. Since the foreigners were soon greatly pleased by such extraordinary land- and peoples culture; everything what they saw, appeared heavenly wondrous to them, so that once getting there, they could not separate from it anymore.

[4] The more they started to traveled there, the more they started to settled there, and in this way the first subjugation of the ancient people and their rulers occurred mainly in quite a peaceful manner.

[5] The descendants of Shivinz became increasingly soft and spoiled people, lived luxuriously, depended on the fame of their forefathers and neglected to a large degree the business of governance. The result of this was that soon the immigrants, who were hardened people, were easily elected by the natives as leaders and placed in ruling positions, and all this without the sword.

[6] To some extend this was quite good and right, but the ancient natives did not won too by this changeover. Since the foreign guardians ('varion'; badly translated pharaohs) formed only too soon an armed force and became true tyrants and people dominators. Only a few people got access to the schools, and what still has been taught there, was a far cry from earlier teachings, which also was the reason why soon from the former purest truth the most absurd idolisms connected to the thickest darkness developed, behind which the ancient culture of this country – even for great wise men – was hardly visible anymore.

[7] It is therefore that these seven pearls are of such incalculable great value, because they originate from a time, when Egypt was standing on top of its highest spiritual development, and they therefore cannot be kept well enough!"

[8] Ask one of the Moors, at which opportunity these pearls have ended up in the sand of the Nile and were lost in the sand

of the stream.

[9] Says Raphael: “I already have told you how the Nile at certain times grows to a true Deluge! About 567 years after ShivinZ, our Nile rose to a puzzling height; in narrow places it rose to over hundred-and-sixty ell (1 ell = 1.143 m) above its normal water level! All cities lying in valley bottoms were entirely over flooded for five weeks, and at that opportunity the pearls including the houses where they have been kept, were swept away by the force of the waves and were covered by sand and mud just as the blocks from which the buildings were constructed.

[10] During the nearly three-thousand years of being buried the crust has build up around them, as you have found them, and from which I have freed them, initially in quite a natural and later in a wondrous manner possible to me.

[11] Now you also know this and have in this seven pearls seven books, which can give now and for all times a quite complete teaching about the country, which is partly also inhabited by you. Therefore keep them save; since each of these pearls is worth a lot more than a large kingdom!

[12] For the time being Oubratouvishar, as the most wise among you, should hold them in save keeping; and if at one stage he will leave this world, he should decide who is worthy to save guard this incalculable treasure. Woe an unworthy person who wanted to seize them because of avarice!

[13] I, as a messenger and will executor of Him, who sits there, believe to have done enough wondrous things to enliven your believe; if this is not enough for you, anything further would also not be enough! Do you now believe that the One sitting over there is He, for whom the great ShivinZ and his two ancestors has build the large rock temple at Jabusimbil?”

[14] Say all “Yes, yes, yes, you wondrous powerful messenger of the Lord, we hereby confirm it from the deepest grounds of our lives!”

[15] With that the angel left them, and Cyrenius asked Me, if these actually rather pure historic facts of Egypt are also

forming a necessity regarding the gospel out of My mouth.

[16] And I said to Him: “One of the biggest! Because after a few centuries all kinds of researchers will rise and search this land in all detail, and they will find many things which were mentioned by the mouth of Raphael. This will confuse them a great deal, just as it also would severely confuse you and already your closest descendants; but this fully true revelation will clear up for you everything in this regard. In later times, however, I will again awaken men, who will again reveal to the people, the searching and studying these old riddles. But now we ourselves want to go over to them and give them the true gospel from the heavens.”

[17] We rose and went to the Moors who waited for us.

40. DIFFERENT MORALS

[1] Finally, when the beautiful morning sun took on its natural light again, we rose from our table and quickly went to the Moors. When I arrived, they all got up from their long table and bowed in deep reverence with their hands laid across their chest.

[2] And the leader said with a good Galilean-Hebrew tongue: “Lord, Lord, Lord! Now there is not a single nonbeliever among us anymore! Every word out of Your holiest mouth will be for us a never estimable great mercy of Your most truly friendliness and charitableness for all times of times, yes even for eternity!

[3] If You, everlasting Holiest, regard us blacks as worthy for a closer teaching about our duties and then also about Your being, make us happy with only a few words out of Your mouth, and we will thereby for all times of times also in our latest descendants feel exceedingly happy, to have seen and spoken to You as the Creator and Lord of all the physical and spiritual worlds!

[4] This shining light, which I have seen in my visions as an everlasting life splendor around Your holy being, is now visible in Your great love, friendliness, and in Your wisdom, which does not have its equal in the whole of eternity.

[5] We are now willing lambs, even when covered with black wool; but just like the black color absorbs more light and warmth than the white – why we also wear white clothes, to keep away from us the abundance of light and warmth, I also believe, that we blacks will also absorb the holy light of Your spirit deeper and more intense in our souls, than many who's flesh is covered by a white skin, but their souls reject the spirit more than our white clothes the natural light and its warmth, as we have seen many such examples in Memphis, which the governor called 'moving life shadows'. They live like dayflies that are created by the morning and are killed again by the evening.

[6] We also do not have nothing with which we could boast before You, o Lord; however, this we know, that we are not more than just people, and that we are all works of one and the same Creator and therefore could never think, that one has more than the other, as if he in all seriousness could be a ruling half-god, as we have seen among the whites, where someone imagines himself a lord and all the others must bow before him to the earth, and those who did not do this, were immediately punished with rods. Lord, we did not like this behavior of the whites at all, and this kind of punishment shows very little wisdom!

[7] We never hit our children, also no animal; but we have patience and endurance and we exercise our children continuously in everything, which we have recognized as good, true and necessary. When our children then grow up and become strong and sensible, we do not treat them as our slaves anymore, but as our completely equal brothers and people, who, just as we as their parents, emerged from the hand of God with all rights of life. And still, our children love us very much, and never did any son or any daughter sin against the father or mother!

[8] Among the whites we saw the children creeping out of fear and whine like dogs before the austere faces of their parents! One could think that in this manner angels could have been

brought up. However, when at times such children are out of sight of the parents, they were like exchanged and could easily be regarded as disciples of the devil, whose evil presence in the bad abysses of the earth were told to us by the governor in Memphis. For such punishing upbringing we forever say no thank you!”

41. DEVELOPMENT OF THE MIND

[1] (Oubratouvishar:) “With us true upbringing consists therein, that we firstly improve the souls of our children as much as possible; once the soul is in order, then the mind gets the education, which we possess ourselves. But the whites begin to educate their children’s mind as soon as they start to babble, and think that once the child has a perfectly educated mind, it will also look after the soul!

[2] O Lord, how silly the many whites are in this regard, that they cannot see, that a pre-educated mind is always a murderer of the soul! Since the pure mind makes the child arrogant and haughty; however, where arrogance, self-conceit and haughtiness has taken ownership of the soul, it is a daunting task for anyone to change it again, and he soon will learn, that an old, crooked-grown tree can never be made straight again.

[3] With us there are no courts, no court houses and no prisons and no dungeons, but also no other laws than those, which are prescribed by a properly formed soul to man. Therefore with us there exists no sin known to us and no crime by any name and therefore also no punishment, since the way every one of us thinks for himself, exactly equally and even better he thinks for his fellowman.

[4] With the white mind-people we have found exactly the opposite. Nearly all are holding everything to themselves and regarding their fellowmen only as much as they are in any way useful to their own selfishness. If the selfish decides that the one or other fellowman can or will not be of any use to him, then every animal is more important to him than such a fellowman!

[5] With us, however, one values a person first as a person. Should a fellowman be of no use to me, I still can be of use to him, and in this way it cancels each other. I also have a servant; but I never have forced him in whatever manner to serve me, it is his completely own free will. We serve each other certainly more, than the whites have ever served each other for the wretched duty remuneration; however no person's will is made a slave of somebody else by any external means, but what he is doing, he does freely and completely unforced!

[6] We therefore do not have any palaces and large dwellings build from bricks, but very simple huts, absolutely identical in appearance. Who does not yet have a hut and can also not be accommodated in another hut, does not have to build himself a new hut with his own strength and own means, or does not have to go to another society to beg, but we voluntarily out of love and respect for him being an identical human as we are, will build him an identical hut as our own; and so there exists peace and unity in always the same measure between us.

[7] This our house order is for the whites, as we have got to know them, completely foreign, and some have blatantly said it to our faces that this was an all culture opposing foolishness. But how is it then that all animals and even the elements are obeying our unified will, while the whites with all their mind culture could not dare to approach a herd of lions?! Woe the most hardened fighter with a sword! He should just try it; already one lion will show him, that the lion is his master and not vice versa!

[8] We, however, can walk among lions and panthers as among our camels, cattle and sheep and goats and do not know one case, where such a beast has ever attacked a human, also not our herds; since they are getting their meat only then, when animals of our quite large herds have died of old age. For that each society has a certain place a considerable distance away, where they take daily one or more dead animals, where immediately the sharp tooth food eaters come and consume the dead animals with skin and hair and bones. Since nobody of us eat meat,

except this of the fish and chicken, as long they are young and soft; the old are also left for the wild animals as food.

[9] What can do a white person with all his mind education if he has fallen into the water? He goes under and drowns! We, however, as it pleases us, can walk on the surface of the water just like on any dry land. Only if someone wants it, he can also dive beneath the water; but it costs him always quite a lot of trouble and effort.

[10] All snakes which are poisonous flee our presence; mice and grasshoppers we only got to know in Egypt; evil ants are shying away from us and our chickens, and vultures and eagles are feeding themselves with the flesh of dead lions, panthers and foxes.

[11] And as such it appears that with us blacks there still exists the order, as it existed and had to exist among people, irrespective of their color of skin, according to the will of the Creator from the primordial beginning; since if the first human pair was placed on this earth with the present bad order of the current white skin people, I would like to know, how they could have protected themselves against the attack of all kind of wild and tearing animals!

[12] Since before the first human pair set foot on this earth, there were swarms of all kinds of tearing and fierce animals, as was shown to us very clearly by the wise governor in Memphis. If the first human pair, according to the teaching of the governor, would be as weak in all its life elements as the white skin people of today, how many times would they have been torn and eaten by the many herds of the wildest beasts?! They had to come to this earth from the air like the exceedingly strong giants before Shivanz was coming to Egypt, and had to be dressed in massive iron clothes and armed with the sharpest weapons, if they wanted to stand up against these beasts with their natural strength – and even then they still would have a lot to do, to successfully combat the enormous monsters!

[13] However, if the ancient people of this earth had similar inner life elements as we are now, they of course would not

need any weapons and were masters and rulers of all animal-, plant- and element world with their soul powers!

[14] I therefore think, because we are like this, Your words of life directed towards us, will take deep roots in our lives! And if You, o Lord, give us any laws or rules to live, we surly will live very strictly accordingly; since this we know how to do, to keep an order which we have recognized as good and true, like perhaps only very seldom any white person.

[15] Since we have the extraordinary luck to be with You, o Lord, You Everlasting, You Creator of all spirit- and material worlds, which must be a miracle of all miracles to even Your greatest angels, we ask You through my mouth, one heart and in all complete unified mind, to add to all the wondrous things we have seen in this shortest of time, also this miracle that You will speak to us a few words!”

42. ABOUT THE UNCONTAMINATED PRIMARY CONDITIONS OF MAN

[1] I said: “Not only a few, but many words I will direct to you! I will not give you any new laws, but only reaffirm the old ones, which I Myself have since the beginning of your being engraved into your hearts with an indestructible writing.

[2] I actually and mainly came into this world, to lead mankind, who completely degenerated from all of My original order, by teachings, examples and deeds back to this primordial state, in which the first people as true masters of all other creatures were.

[3] These people with a white skin therefore need My teaching and My deeds very much, so that they can recognize, who is He, who teaches them and what He wants. However, you still live in this marvelous primordial state. Your life school begins with the right means at the right place. You start to teach the people initially as people there, were they have to be taught first and foremost, and in future the whites should do likewise; since now I show them the way how to do it.

[4] But it will still take a lot of troubles, teachings and deeds

and time, until these whites will get there where you are now. They are the stray, the wrong and the lost ones, who must be rehabilitated again; they are the sick and therefore need the doctor who can cure them.

[5] I also could have come to you, since you are now incomparable better than the whites; but you never needed My presence. However, now I need your presence here as witness of My primordial order and therefore I guided you by My will and finally urged you to come here, so that these whites can see, what man is and should be in his primordial state.

[6] Therefore you will now perform in front of these people a few examples of your still real primordial humanship, to teach these your many blind and still very wrong brothers! There are some among them, who are quite near to perfection; but no one of them is as a human as far as the least of you! – Will you out of love to Me, do this?”

[7] Says Oubratouvisar: “O Lord, whose love, goodness and mercy already fills those spaces of infinity, in which only after passing eternities new creations will praise Your most holy name in deepest humility, what is it that we do not wanted to do with the greatest submission to Your holy will? Everything, everything! O Lord, only give us instructions!”

[8] I said: “Now then, show us first your primordial magnificence over the element of the water and walk on its surface as on dry, steady ground, and also show us your great agility on the moist field!”

[9] Immediately the leader calls upon his sixty in numbers soot-black companions and asks Me, if this would be enough. I affirmed this, and the sixty of both genders went to the sea and kept on walking on its surface like on dry land before. Finally they demonstrated some speed exercises and shot around the quite calm surface with such speed, that no swallow even in its quickest diving flight would have caught up with them. Within a few moments they were so far away from us, that we could not see them anymore, and within a few moments arrived back very near at the shoreline with a hurricane-like noise.

43. THE POWER OF THE MOORS OVER WATER

[1] I said: “Only a few things more, which you know of, for example what you do on the water during a flaming hot wind flow, and how you catch fish!”

[2] The leader returns quickly to the sixty and tells them My wish, and suddenly all fall on their faces, respectively onto the water, and lie for a few moments like dry wood on it. Soon they become very restless and begin, stretched out, to spin exceedingly fast around their own axis.

[3] (The Lord:) “They do this to always keep wet on all body parts, not to be burned or being burned to ashes by the glowing hot Kamb’sim (to where should I flee?); since the Kamb’sim (also Kam beshim = ‘to where do I flee now?’) is by far the hottest wind in the desert of Nubia and Abyssinia. The ‘Samun’ (for pitch = the wind melting earth pitch) is by far not that hot as the Kamb’sim. Even less hot is the ‘Giroukou’ (the southeasterly wind blowing over the pastures), since the wind coming over the great pastures ‘Giri’, lying precisely in that direction in relation to Memphis, were already named like this from the most ancient times. However, both winds were so hot, except the Kamb’sim, that the people retreated to the moist caves.

[4] What they are doing now, they do only during the Kamb’sim; and if it continues for long and increases in intensity, only then they begin to dive beneath the water, as they are showing it to us now. However, they can never stay under the water for too long, since their strong inner and outer life sphere make their bodies specific gravity lighter than this of the water.

[5] They now sit on the water and in this position they will show us, how they catch their fish! See, by the strong power of their will, they drive the fish from far away towards them! They then take them by hand out of the water and place them according to their need into the opened up pinafore dress, which they always carry around their loins, and drive in a seated position quickly to us on shore. Their sails and oars consist only in their will; as

soon as they want to make a quick movement on the water, they want it with their undoubted believe steadiness, and everything happens as they want it to happen!

[6] See, they now have finished fishing and will drive in their seated position over the surface of the water and will arrive with the speed of an arrow here on shore! See, they now are departing and arrive already here on shore! They quickly stand up and carry their catch here to us.

[7] Marcus, tell your sons, to immediately take care of the many and very noble fish in water, otherwise they will go bad!”

[8] When the blacks come to us with their aprons full of living fish, Marcus himself leads them to a fish container, where they unload their fish, a few hundred in number. After that they again quickly return to Me.

[9] And the leader immediately addresses the whites with the following words and says: “This, white brothers, what we have done just now, appears to you totally foreign and as never seen before? However, with us very simple people of nature, all this what we have performed on the water before you just now, is something very natural to us like with you to see, to hear, to smell and to feel.

[10] The soul hardened and wrong-acting person will also become a much heavier body and is like a stone which does not float on water, because it is heavier than water. But we are like wood, whose inner life spirits are already much freer than those of a stone which are still under severe judgment.

[11] Pay attention, let a soul person come here, who should, however, not have felt any haughtiness and no power hungry self-love in his chest; he should go into the water, and I guarantee that he will not sink! Place next to him a power addicted and very self-loving person on the volatile element, and he will sink as a stone! He had to be very fat, which, however, is rarely the case with very self-loving people, then the fat would keep him at least up to two thirds of his body afloat above the water, this means if he is really fat, however, in his normal state of flesh he sinks like a stone.

[12] With us the water is regarded as a good test for the inner honesty of a person. If the water does not carry a person properly, his soul most likely has suffered some damage, and the element will not be friendly to him and provide him the necessary service. As we have moved with the most evident casualness on the water and also have shown, that the animals in the water are subject to our will since the beginning of our being, the same was the case with the primordial people. For them streams, lakes and even the sea were no obstacles, to walk across the whole world; they did not need any ships nor any bridges. However, you are often devoured by the water completely including your ships and bridges, and not one water mosquito obeys your will! How far you thus away from the genuine mankind!

[13] You must have all kinds of weapons, to make the enemy escape; we never have used them. Until today we did not have any other tools than a cutting tool made from bones, what we use to prepare our huts and clothes in a quite laborious way; but despite this we never had to walk around naked, and our troubles have never become punishing to us. If we take the necessary tools from you with us, we will use them with an increased neighborly love; but they will never serve us as weapons, thereof you can be completely rest assured!

[14] But now you can make a test on the water, and show to us, how life-competent you already are!”

[15] This type of language made the Romans feel deep down a little offended, but they kept it, as one might say, quite willingly under the lid.

44. THE POWER OF THE MOORS OVER ANIMALS

[1] The leader, however, asked Me, whether there was anything else unusual which they should demonstrate to the whites.

[2] I said: “Yes, My dear, old friends! See up there, about 5,000 steps towards midday at the lake you see a hill, which drops off very steep towards the lake. It is covered with very poisonous snakes and adders, and you can chase these beasts away for Me! All of us will accompany you to there!”

[3] Said the leader: “Lord, You Almighty! If it concerns only the expulsion, it only costs You a thought, and the hill is free from all vermin for all times of times; but if it here also concerns an example, which power is hidden in primordial mankind, we do this like everything else according to Your highest holy will!”

[4] I said: “It is self-evident that I ask you for it for the sake of an example; therefore let’s go!”

[5] We started to go and moved quickly over to the described hill and reached it after half an hour. When arriving there, the quite stretched out hill was alive because of all the snakes and adders; a hissing and nearly intolerable whistling started, so that one hardly could understand one’s own word. All those many thousand beasts hurried into the sea and swam with the speed of an arrow over the widely spread waves of the water, and within a few moments the hill was clean.

[6] The leader came to Me and said: “Lord, all the snakes and adders, from the oldest to the most recently hatching the eggs, are gone; however, there are still as many stuck in the eggs! Who will remove them from the many holes and nests? Because if they are not removed, within six month this hill will be covered again like it was until now! Who will clean the hill then?”

[7] I said: “Do you have no means to also destroy these?”

[8] Says the leader: “Accept for the *Ich nei maon* (does not have any poison) we do not know any other means! One had to heat up the whole hill for some time. Thereby the destruction of the

nests and eggs would be possible along natural means; since to stay here, to suffocate the beasts by our permanent outer life-circle, we cannot do.”

[9] I said: “Let it be! You already have performed your miracles, and I do not ask more from you; I will take care of it! Since this hill is freed from its evil inhabitants, we will climb it, and you will give us some more examples of your human abilities!”

[10] Thereupon we climbed the hill, where there was room for at least 2,000 people on its top. When we reached the top, about thousand feet above the surface of the water, long rows of cranes moved through the air.

[11] And I said to the leader: “Friend, are these birds also still submissive to you?”

[12] Said the leader: “These are foreign, never seen specie; however, I do not doubt it for one moment that also they feel our will and will direct themselves accordingly!”

[13] Here the leader looked at his companions and said: “Be with me, so that we can fulfill the will of the Lord!”

[14] As soon as the leader had spoken these words, the cranes began to descend and were within a few moments on the hill among the blacks; but they avoided the whites. Shortly afterwards the leader indicated to the cranes to continue their flight, and they flew away.

[15] And again a couple of vultures of enormous size were flying high up in the air, and started to circle above our heads.

[16] And the leader said to the whites: “Call them down, the circling pair!”

[17] Said Cyrenius to the leader: “But why this a little haughty looking request to us? Since you know it anyway, that we spoiled people are not able to perform such primordial human deeds! Just fulfill the will of the Lord; for everything else the Lord will take care, and according to His teaching also we as far as possible!”

[18] Says the leader: “You think that I have put the request to you whites for enticing the two floating vultures above us, from

a kind of self-rise feeling? Oh, about such opinion of me you are quite wrong! I put the request to you my white brothers, to life deeply remind you about your great wrongness, for which you of course are finally little or not to blame at all, but nevertheless it cannot do you any harm!

[19] How should we be able to boast about our natural properties?! Or do you boast about your vision or hearing?! Since if we could be proud about our to you appearing wondrous properties, we long ago would not possess them anymore; however, since this is something impossible for us, we still possess our to you wondrous appearing properties, of which you whites will soon get new proof of! – Come down you two inhabitants of the air!”

[20] When the leader finished speaking quite loudly, the two mighty vultures shot down like arrows and sat with all gentleness and visible friendliness, as if properly trained by an animal tamer, on the right hand of the leader.

[21] In this moment a magpie flew by and the leader instructed one of the vultures to catch it unharmed and bring it to him. Like an arrow the gigantic vulture shot after the quickly fluttering magpie and brought it within a few moments back to the leader without flying away. The vulture was holding the shouting magpie firmly in its claws, however, without harming it, and only let go of it when the leader got hold of it. Thereupon he stroked the two vultures and let them go again, whereupon the two large birds of prey quickly rose high into the air and were on the lookout for a fat prey for them.

[22] The magpie, however, the black gave to Cyrenius as remembrance to this deed, which appeared rather wonderfully to the upper governor and all the other Romans and Jews.

[23] Cyrenius handed the magpie to his two daughters, who were also present, for carefully looking after it, and said to Me: “But Lord, this is absolutely miraculous, what these blacks are capable of, if in all secrecy Your will was not playing a little roll in all this?!”

[24] Said I: “I said it to you before, that I will let act them

completely on their own! Why do you doubt this now?! O just be patient; I will let them do a few other things, which will make you feel quite dizzy!”

45. THE POWER OF THE MOORS OVER THE PLANTS AND THE ELEMENTS

[1] Thereupon I again call Oubratouvishar and said to him: “Show us now, how much you are familiar with the power of the air; since in the beginning it was given to man in his purity, to rule also the spirits of the air, so that they are serviceable too in all circumstances, if he would need their services! Show us thus, to what degree you are still equipped with this primordial life ability!”

[2] Immediately the leader calls ten of his most competent companions and instructed them to form a circle around him, with each one’s right foot covering the left of his neighbor and stretch their hands towards him. This took place straight away, and our leader began to turn around, left the ground, floated now completely in the air, namely by a good man length high above the earth.

[3] In this position he asked me if he should swing even higher, or if this was sufficient as a testimony.

[4] And I said: “this is sufficient, therefore come back!”

[5] Immediately the ten left the circle and the leader was quickly back on earth again, bowed deeply before Me and asked Me if he should produce some more.

[6] And I said: “How do you uproot trees and move large rock masses?”

[7] Said the leader: “Lord, our country has a significant shortage of strong and big trees; only the higher mountains have the pleasure to have them. On the high lying pastures which the Kamb’sim cannot reach, where our herds are grazing, here and there we find an old Bohahania tree which normally serves the apes as a dwelling. Here and there one also finds a cypress and myrrh, wild dates and buck and chicken-bread. This is already

the whole tree vegetation of our country.

[8] In the planes and in the wind shadow corners of our country, only the noble dates, the fig, the ouraniza (orange) and the semenza (seminal apples or pomegranate) and several significant shrubs are growing, which supply us with the building material for our huts.

[9] To uproot them, requires truly no extraordinary power; however, on the stronger trees we have not yet tried our strength, although we have no doubt that also they, just like the heaviest and largest rocks, must obey our will. Here on this mountain is standing an immense tree, of which we of course cannot know its name, and also about its other properties; however, we can try if it is possible to uproot it by our will or not!”

[10] Says the old Marcus: “Now, most obedient servant of all lords of the world! This is at least a five-hundred year old cedar! Seven men are nearly not enough to enclose it, and four very strong and seasoned loggers will hardly have chopped this cedar down within two days, and now six men and seven women want to go there and want to uproot this tree without mattock or ax?! Now, this story, if not secretly supported by the almighty will of the Lord, will surely become a little rare!”

[11] I said: “Just be patient, My old warrior! Also this time I will stay with My will completely at home, and still, within a short time the tree will be lifted from the earth with all its roots!”

[12] While speaking to Marcus, the blacks very gently put their hands on the trunk, namely in such a way, that the right hand of one Moor always covers the left of its neighbor. They remained absolutely quiet for about half of an quarter of an hour in such a position next to the tree. After this time the tree, initially began very slowly to turn and a tremendous cracking sound could be heard. Then all present started to be amazed in the highest degree, and nobody understood, to only partially decipher this phenomenon.

[13] When the tree now, including the thirteen very slightly

clasping it, began to turn more and more, one could see that it together with the earth lump and the clasping Moors, were already freely turning in the air. Then some, especially the women, started to scream; since they thought that the falling tree will squash a few Moors.

[14] However, I said to the timorous: “Do not fear; the tree will be laid down very gently and nobody will be harmed by its fall!”

[15] With that all were at ease, and in the same moment the clasping Moors let go of the tree and very suddenly jumped from the mountain and came to us. In the same moment the tree started to sway back and forth, finally inclined towards its natural point of gravity and after a few moments very softly lay down on the ground.

[16] When the tree was uprooted in this way, I also showed the Moors a rock whose weight was at least 5,000 centner (1 centner = 50kg), and said to the leader: “Lift also this rock and place it in the same hole which originated by the lifting of the tree!”

[17] Quickly the same Moors went to the rock and clasped it in the same manner as earlier the tree. Even sooner than the tree, the rock floated in the air. Because of its larger size, it was of course clasped by quite some more of the Moors; but it was clear to everybody that a thousand of the strongest people would still by far not be enough to master the weight of this rock.

[18] In about a very small half quarter of an hour, the rock was standing firmly in the hole, and the Moors came back to us, and the leader asked Me if there was something else to do.

[19] However, I pretended as if thinking about something, which the leader immediately noticed, and he said to Me: “O, there will again something immense be forthcoming, since You are holding council with yourself! Because we were of the opinion, that for a God already from eternity everything is exceedingly clear, what He wants to do!”

[20] I said: “O yes, this is so! But I only granted you some rest; since this, what you still have to do for me, is always your most

unfavorable task, and you needed for the two tasks which demanded a lot from your external outer life-sphere, a little rest. You have now rested, and now you have to show how you prepare a fire and how you are also masters of its element! Go and make fire and thereupon demonstrate that you are its master!”

[21] Straight away all Moors present formed a semicircle around a large but for quite some time already very dry bush and stretched their hands and fingers ray-like towards the bush. Within a few moments the bush began to smolder; the smoke became stronger and stronger, and suddenly the bush was in flames. When, however, the bush was burning properly with high reaching flames, all the Moors lay in a closed circle around the fire on their faces, and within a moment the fire went out to such an extent, that one could not find a single glowing little spark in the whole half burnt bush.

[22] Thereupon the Moors came back and asked Me whether they have performed their act satisfactorily. And I gave them the best testimony. They immediately wanted words as a teaching for them; but I indicated to them, to wait a little, since I first have to explain their deeds to the whites. With that the Moors were satisfied and we went back to our tables.

46. SELF-KNOWLEDGE OF MAN

[1] When I took my regular seat at the table with My disciples, Romans and Greeks, the leader came to Me and asked Me, if he with some of his companions may be present during My explanations.

[2] I said: “Without any objection; since from now on you have to recognize your life in full! You are still in full possession of the primordial life strength of man. To My pleasure you are still as people complete masters of the whole of nature. All this lies in your most perfect trust and your undoubted faith and firmest will. However, you do not know your strength, just like somebody does not know the power which makes the limbs of a

person move, and drives the blood in the veins, and makes the heart pulsating and forces the lungs to breath the air in and out according to the need to live and according to its inner activity in relation to more or less warmth, which mainly is produced in the blood by greater or lesser activity of the body limbs.

[3] These are daily experiences of every person, and still nobody understands them, because nobody knows himself properly; how much less are understood your extraordinary life properties, which apparently lie deeper than only those which are actively expressing themselves in your living organism!

[4] However, if I explain to you the deeper lying, you will understand them more easily, than when I would explaining to you the body's organism and its relation to the soul. Such cannot actually be explained, since the for you nearly countless multitude of the different organs would occupy you longer than the age of Methuselah, namely close to a thousand years, to only count them from the first to the last, not mentioning to understand the individual composition and functions of each organ and to learn the general connection, the interaction and thousands of different things of every organ.

[5] For example: Two hairs are standing firmly next to each other. You might think that they require the same treatment, and when exchanged would also grow. With the hair on the body it cannot be done, like replanting trees, shrubs and plants in the ground! One hair only grows with a unique organism at only that place, where it occurs; at any other place it would not grow with its unique construction of its root organism.

[6] In the human body organism exists in a highly orderly selection and for you an almost unbelievable diversity. To understand the organic construction of the human body and to know about every smallest atom and to recognize the reason of the 'so and not otherwise', one first have to be perfected in the spirit.

[7] When the soul and the spirit have become one, than the completed and fully illuminated soul sees its body from the insight, recognizes then with one glance the very artfully build

construction of the body and remembers the reason and cause of each individual even so smallest part of an organ of its body and recognizes its most effective construction. For as long a soul does not reach its life's completion, in even thousand and again thousands of years it cannot come to a thorough recognition of the organism of her body.

[8] But it is a completely different story with the pure spiritual ability of the soul! It can be explained to it in general terms, and it is also necessary, so that it recognizes it sooner and more easily. Since without this practical recognition, the soul could never reach a true unification with its spirit, and without it such an inner and deeper recognition of oneself is impossible.

[9] Therefore pay attention how I now will explain to you the right, orderly primordial life of the first human as clearly as possible!"

47. THE RADIATING SPHERES OF MAN AND THE SUN

[1] (The Lord:) "This, say, first human pair could impossibly otherwise than according to the right life order in a completed state been placed on this earth by Me. The soul-life had to appear as perfectly developed in this world, in order not to quickly fall prey to thousand times thousand other hostile creatures and elements.

[2] The actual level being with My primordial divine being was already perfected in the first human pair, and therefore could most effectively exercise the magnificence over all creatures. However, how does such effectuation take place? Listen!

[3] The perfect soul in the heart, is personally also in a perfect human form present in the body; but its awareness, feeling and will radiates, just like the light rays from the sun, far and in an effectuating manner in all thinkable directions. The closer to the soul, the more intensive and effective is also the continual outflow of the thinking, feeling and will.

[4] The outer light sphere of the sun, in which this earth, the moon and a large number of all kinds of other world bodies are

present, is so to speak the outer life sphere of the sun, through which everything, which is present in its realm, is awakened to a certain physical life. Therefore everything must more or less submit itself to the order of the sun, which thereby becomes a lawgiver and a lord of all other world bodies, which are present somewhere in the field of its light radiation.

[5] One of course cannot say of the sun that it can think and will; however, its light is still a great thought, and the warmth of the light is quite a firm will, but not from the sun, but emanating from Me and effectuating through the organic being of the sun body.

[6] The closer a world body is to the sun, the more it must perceive effectively and decisively the life effectuating power of the outer life sphere of the sun, and must submit itself in everything, what the light and the warmth of the sun wants to produce in and on it.

[7] Just like the sun effectuates wondrous things on the world bodies simply by its outer life sphere, an unspoiled and in its original manner perfect soul, which is full of life, thus full of love, full of believe and full of a firm will!

[8] Such a soul is completely light and warmth and radiates far out, and this radiation then forms continuously its mighty outer life sphere. Just like My will expresses itself wonderfully effectively through the outer life sphere of the sun, and no power can oppose it, similar the will of a perfect, unspoiled soul, which – because of My order – is also My will, expresses itself in a wondrous effective way.

[9] If I would allow it for the sun to became completely wrecked, getting destroyed in its highly artfully and wisely created exceptional organism and mechanism and its great nature-soul of all nature-souls would finally become frightened and deteriorated, and would have nothing else to do and nothing to worry about, other than getting its in little pieces wrecked body organism in order or in the worst case even abandon everything, and leave the greater pieces to dissolve on their own, what would then happen to the all enlivening outer life

sphere? In its planetary region immediately the greatest chaos would occur; all vegetation and all flesh life would come to an abrupt end!

[10] Even if the people would survive on all kinds of supplies for some time, illuminate the everlasting night for a while with torches and lamps and heat up the rooms with the available wood of forests of the earth, this could continue with the most richly provided people of this earth at the most for ten years. However, after this time surely all vegetative and creature-like life on this earth would have come to an end. All the plants would not grow anymore and would not produce any living seed anymore; the animals would not find food anymore and would perish from hunger and freeze to death because of too much cold; the earth would leave its orbit and either collide with another planet, or would after many thousand years come into the light region of another of the countless many suns, in whose light and warmth it would start to thaw up and in a changed order slowly begin to revive again, but could never return to its current, quite happy, best ordered being!

[11] All this would be effect and result, if the sun in its being gets into great or even greatest disarray. It would not be lord and lawgiver for the many other, smaller, orbiting world bodies anymore. They also would, as said, soon get into a horrible chaos and by their mighty fall would become hostile to the sun, what it never could prevent, since it would not possess any outer life power anymore, to either stop the untied gravitational forces of the planets or at least to temper them.

[12] But that a not becoming and quite avoidable and only briefly occurring local disarray on the great surface, thus only on the outer skin of the sun, expresses itself immediately unfavorably, is proved by the not seldom occurring black spots, which you have seen on the sun during sun rise and sun down. Should you see such a spot only as a smallest dot, you can be sure that such disarray soon begins to express itself in a stormy and bad weather.

[13] But why this? The sun is then so far away from earth, that a

strongly shot arrow would require about fully fifty years to reach the sun; what can have an influence on the life-powerful earth, if it happens at such a distance on the sun body?

[14] Yes, what occurs directly on the sun body would not have an effect on earth; however, the black spot on the sun is not that small, as it looks like from this earth! In reality it is a few thousand times bigger than the whole surface of the earth. This effectuates for the highly sensitive life spirits of the earth an already noticeable lack of light and warmth. They immediately become frightened and begin to be exceedingly active, and howling storms, clouds, rain, hail and snow, at times even at the warmer countries of the earth, are the result of such a very smallest disorder on only a certain point of the sun, since the local disorder expresses itself also unfavorably on the world bodies in the external life reach of the sun through the outer life sphere of the sun, which reaches still far beyond this earth into the wide space of creation, just as the otherwise undisturbed light and warmth order of the sun expresses itself quite favorably through the outer life sphere of the sun on the world bodies.

48. THE INFLUENCE OF MAN ON DOMESTIC ANIMALS

[1] (The Lord:) “Imagine yourself a human soul in its original unspoiled state as a true sun among all the various enlivened creatures containing a soul, which all have to submit to the human soul, since they take from its outer life sphere, when this like the soul, is in perfect order, their life light and spiritual life warmth to vegetate in their further rising soul life sphere, and thereby become gentle, tolerant and obedient. Since the souls of plants as well as animals have the to you of course still much unknown destination, once to become human souls themselves.

[2] The plants and even more so the animals are nothing else than suitable pre-vessels according to My wisdom and insight for accumulation and successive development and for seizing each other of the – you might say – general nature-soul life-

power in the immeasurable space of creation, from which also your souls originate, if originally on this or also on another earth world, does not matter. These animal souls feel the emanation of a proper human soul and the sphere formed by its outer life-light and outer life-warmth.

[3] In this perfect outer life sphere the animals are prospering, like the planets in the light and the warmth of the sun, and not one soul of any animal is capable of rising against the will of a perfected human soul, but circles modestly around it like a planet around the sun and develops in such spiritual light and in its warmth quite excellently for a further transition to a higher level.

[4] To give you a more practically insight, we will look a bit closer to some domestic animals and their owners! Lets go to a hard hearted and arrogant owner and look in the spirit at his domestic animals! His dogs are more evil and wilder than the wolves of the woods, his cattle are shy and quite often frightened and dangerously wild. His sheep and goats are fleeing every human form and are difficult to catch. Through the garden of his pigs, which he keeps for the sake of their fat, it is not advisable to walk, to avoid being attacked murderously by their total wildness. The chicken and other poultry are also shy and are difficult to catch. Also with his donkeys, horses, camels and oxen it is not advisable to become too trusting; since very little of any animal culture is noticeable. Only by a continuous wild shouting and cursing and continual hitting, bumping and stabbing can they be used for a certain work, whereby most of the time some accident occurs!

[5] Yes, why are with this our hard and arrogant owner the domestic animals are so raw and wild and so very much unbendable? The soul of their owner is for them a life-sun in complete disarray! His servants and workers are soon as their master, therefore also not nearly a life-sun for the ice cold souls of the animals given to them to guard and to lead! Everybody shouts, curses and hits to what he is capable of! How could the animals of such an owner be in a wholesome state, of which one

can say that they are in order?!

[6] But let's go now to a really old-patriarchal good and wise owner of many and large herds and observe his domestic animals! What a nearly unbelievable difference! Neither the cattle nor the sheep leave their good shepherd! Only a single call of him and they hurry to him, surround him and with a nearly visible attention listen to him, if he wants to say something to them! And if he does this, they obey and wondrously bid the will of the good shepherd, where they have refreshed themselves with his soul-light.

[7] The camel understands the slightest sign of its good guide, and the courageous horse does not become shy under the saddle of its rider. In short, all domestic animals of a gentle and good landlord are gentle, obedient and listen to the voice of their guardians and their master, and with all animals one quite easily notices a certain gentleness, as you can recognize it at the noble trees with a first glance, that they carry noble fruit; since there the trunk, the branches and all the foliage are softly rounded, smooth and without sharp points and prickles, and the fruit is tasting lovely.

[8] The reason for this is, as said, one or more healthy, unspoiled souls with a lighted being, spreading a soul-like light-sphere, which contains everything, what the soul as life-element contains in itself, namely: love, faith, trust, recognition, wanting and success.”

49. BENEFITS OF A PROPER EDUCATION OF THE SOUL

[1] (The Lord:) “However, if the soul of a person is buried in all kinds of worldly material worries, or if it begins to bury itself therein, it then clouds its light-being, and finally it will become completely dark in it. Then there is no stock left of any mighty love anymore, and the very little left is nearly not enough for itself; then comes self-love, which cannot go over to anybody else anymore. But if the love becomes so small, from where should come a mighty faith and will, since faith is the light from

the flame of love and the will the power of the light that is active everywhere?!

[2] If such love-poor people could finally, even if very dull, begin to recognize, that because of the weakness of their love they cannot succeed with anything, and they most of the time see a line crossing out each of their calculations, of which they are guilty themselves, since there can be no effectuation, for which the necessary strength is lacking, they still could be helped; but as such they only become angry and full of bitterness about every success with other people.

[3] Rage is also a light, but a destroyable one. In such infernal light they soon see all kinds of deceiving means, by which they could come to great wealth. They soon try out such means; however, most of the time they fail, since they are deceiving means. However, the repeated failure does not teach them, but makes them even more angry. They become proud and full of haughtiness and begin to turn to violent means and actually use them. An occasional success makes them perkier, they are becoming cruel and try to remove everything from their path, what they regard as an obstacle to their perceived luck. They thereby have accumulated for themselves by all kinds of bad means considerable wealth, and now recognize this road as the only right and true, on which they themselves have climbed to happiness.

[4] If such people have children, as it is usually the case, they will educate them in no other manner, than the way by which the parents themselves have climbed to their worldly happiness, namely by all kind of worldly cleverness! They then let their children learn all kind of things, however everything for the world! No consideration whatsoever is taken for the education of the heart, and cannot be taken, since the parents and the teachers and educators, who, because of greed want to please the parents, do not themselves have any idea about the heart and the soul.

[5] Everything is done to as early as possible develop the sharpness of the mind. For that the child is motivated as much

as possible by all kind of presents and honorings, is thereby from the earliest time on as much as possible exercised in selfishness and greed with the education of the mind, wears fine and decorated clothes and quite often does not know himself because of all the haughtiness before reaching the age of ten. Woe the poor child or also any other person, who does not show the expected respect to such spoiled child, or even dares to mock it! Because he has made himself a permanent enemy of such a spoiled child!

[6] Under such circumstances, where in such people would be the inner life strength resembling Me?! Where is man's magnificence over the whole of nature and over all the elements, out of which finally everything created consist and must consist?!

[7] However, if the heart in man is developed first, and only afterwards a quite easy and effective education of the mind is added, the awakened mind will become a living light-life-ether, which surrounds the soul like the light-ether surrounds the sun, out of which then all these marvelous effectuations start to appear, which you see living on this earth everywhere.

[8] During the right education of the soul of man, the soul remains inside and active, and what you call 'mind' is the emanating effectuation of the inner activity of the soul. The outer-light of the mind illuminates all the still so critical external relationships, and the will then enters this outer-light and effectuates everything fertilizing and growing; if man's order is set like this according to My order, then the will and trust is also something emanating out of Me or out of My almighty will, which most certainly all creatures must obey. This what such an orderly person wants, must happen in a wide vicinity, because the outer life-sphere of a person is actually filled with My spirit, to whom all things are possible.

[9] If such a person is then completely reborn out of his spirit, he is completely equal to Me and in all his life's freedom he can do, within My order which he became himself, whatever he wants, and it must be there and happen according to his free

will. In such life perfected state, because completely resembling Me, man is not only a master of the creatures and the local elements of this earth, but his magnificence then reaches, just as My own, to the whole creation in endless space, and his will can prescribe laws to the countless worlds, and they will adhere to them. Since his transfigured vision penetrates everything, just as My own and actually with My own, and his clearest recognition sees the needs everywhere in all of creation and can prescribe and create and help, wherever and whatever it will be; since he is in everything one with Me.”

50. THE POWER OF A PERFECTED SOUL

[1] (The Lord:) “Only this degree of the most high life-perfection, nobody could have reached before My incarnation; and therefore I have come to this earth, to make you My true children by the rebirth of your spirits in your souls. Thus, if I now speak of a perfect soul, it refers to a soul in which My spirit is already active, but has not yet become completely one with it.

[2] Based on the earlier mentioned reasons, a perfected soul therefore is not only able, to perform wondrous things as a master of all creatures, but will also have momentarily visions about the pure spiritual spheres because of its more awakened spirit, and can hear the word of the spirit of God, as this was the case with all seers and prophets, who alongside with their gift of seeing and prophesying out of My spirit, also had a certain, for all physically thinking mankind, visible miraculous control over the elements and over all creatures.

[3] Moses performed miracles, his brother Aaron the same, also Joshua and later Elias, and after him still many prophets and seers.

[4] A prophet by the name of Daniel (son of the day or the light) was thrown by a cruel king into a lion’s den containing twelve hungry lions as executioners, because Daniel gave him an admonishing speech. They had been fed for years with all kinds of unlucky criminals. Upon the sharp admonishing speech, the

angry king, despite loving the prophet because of his wisdom, threw Daniel without any mercy and mitigation into the den of certain death.

[5] Only Daniels perfect soul was also a master over the hungry lions! When he was thrown into the den by the henchmen, the lions did not only do anything to him, but crouched in visible reverence around him as their natural lord and master. Daniel, knowing how he could survive among the lions, asked his disciples for his writing board and wrote for three days the prophecy, unscathed in the death pit among the twelve lions. When this was reported to the king, he regretted what he did to Daniel, and he ordered to pull Daniel out of the pit with a basket and gave him his freedom.

[6] At the same time there were three youth, who refused to bend their knees in front of Baal. Upon this the stupid king became so angry, that he ordered for a limekiln to be heated excessively for three days, in which the three youth would be thrown, if they continued to oppose the king's commandment any longer. However, the soul-perfect youth stood by their well-founded intention and did not express the slightest fear of the glowing kiln. The three days passed, and the three youth were, upon the fierce orders of the king, seized by the henchmen and thrown over the glowing edge into the wide fire hole. However, not a single hair on their heads was harmed, while each of the henchmen were caught by the too great heat and burned to coal.

[7] Yes, what was it then protecting the youth in the fire kiln? The perfected, in My primordial order being soul! Finally there appeared an angel and led them perfectly unharmed out of the terrible hot fire, which no other person could come closer than thirty steps, without the danger of being suddenly burned to death!

[8] These are nothing else than examples of the marvelous strength and power of a perfected soul!"

51. THE EFFECT OF THE SUN. THE HUMAN EYE.

[1] (The Lord:) “These Moors here again provided the most speaking proofs of it, that it is like this and cannot be otherwise, and the sun provides on a daily basis in every plant and in every animal a by far more tangible proof, about the power of its power and effectuation in its wide-stretched outer life-sphere.

[2] All this must appear to the wrongly brought-up world and mind-person like a fantasy, and he sees therein anything else than a fabrication of a heated imagination, which all appears to him as sheer foolishness. These are for his recognition pure foolishnesses, whose effectuating appears to him as impossible, because it is of course impossible for him to do this and must be impossible to him because of very wise and necessary reasons. Since who can perform some handy work without hands or walk without feet?!

[3] If the sun would be a completely dark lump, as it, despite its size, could as well be like black limestone, it would not bring about any natural life on the worlds. However, its inner extraordinary, for your understanding admittedly still incomprehensible organic construction is composed to such an extent, that from its inner intestines continuously a lot of fine air types (gases) must develop. By that the exceedingly large sun body is forced to turn around its own axis, which rotating movement brings the large atmosphere of the sun into constant friction with the surrounding ether (primordial air), by which, secondly, the activity of the countless many nature spirits inside the large sun-atmosphere are constantly agitated anew, which activity in turn is then transferred to the nature spirits resting in the ether to such an extent, that they, as very easily being agitated, within one moment for more than two-hundred-thousand field-lanes (1 field-lane = 125 steps?) in a straight line away from the sun are also agitated and in each subsequent moment for the same distance further and further, and for each following moment (equal to one second) still further and further into for you immeasurable distances away from the sun.

[4] Through this co-excitement of the primordial nature-spirits in the immeasurable space of creation, the original light of the sun is allotted in a manner, which I have explained to you already extensively, to the in its region orbiting earth bodies or planets and causes in the smaller atmospheres of the planets a similar agitation of the already more dense nature-spirits, where, the lower down the more intensely the agitation is observed and felt, since the spirits becoming more and more dense. Since when rubbing two stones against each other, the friction will certainly be more intense, than when rubbing two feathers against each other, which is also the reason why it is in the deep valleys of the earth more lighter and warmer than on the highest mountain peaks of the earth.

[5] But somebody among you who is good with calculations might think: 'Yes, if this is effectuated by the reproduction of the sun- and every other light, then the light must be the same everywhere, and it is then impossible to distinguish the picture of the sun more separate and by far stronger illuminated, than the other light-firmament!'

[6] Yes, I say to you, this would be infallibly the case, if I not had made the eye in such a way, that all light and reflected light of everything illuminated and the most excited contour rays, originating by a certain backward effect, are cutting each other as lines with a certain angle, and reach the highly sensitive retina through a very tiny opening and from there the even more sensitive optic nerve.

[7] By this arrangement all only simple excited light outflows are eliminated, and only the main contour rays reach as broken up (diffracted?) the highly sensitive retina and from there the optic nerve, through which only then the picture is engraved by the suitable organs on the little brain boards in a the picture corresponding manner or in corresponding signs and as such presented to the soul to see.

[8] If the eye would not be constructed in such a way, you of course would not see a separate sun as a light picture, but everything would be a homogenous sea of light, equal to what

various enraptured people have seen spiritually, in which they could not even discern their own I as a being in the general light.

[9] A wise Egyptian Greek, Plato, gives in his writings left behind testimony of this, and alongside him various wise from ancient times. They fell asleep and found themselves in a sea of light, in which they could think to be in it, but could not see themselves, and therefore had the highly pleasing feeling to be fully one with the primordial light, which they called the actual Godhead.

[10] The reason for this was lying in the not yet fully developed view of the soul. And it was therefore not fully perfected, because its original up-bringing, although strict, was still wrong; since wherever one places the education of the mind above the formation of the heart, the up-bringing is wrong.”

52. REBIRTH AND THE RIGHT EDUCATION

[1] (The Lord:) “What fruit would a tree bring forth, if not the heart appealing appearances of the blossom of the first fruit would lead the way? How can fall be in the place of spring and spring in place of the fall, which normally is followed by a freezing winter? Would not the frost of winter destroy the heart uplifting blossoms and kill the hope radiating leaves together with the true fruit, which first is blessed and enlivened to become a growing being by the blossom? The wood of the tree would increase, but nobody of you would see a fruit ripening on the same!

[2] And so it is also with a person and especially with his soul! Everything becomes coarse matter, of which no fruit is forthcoming, other than those which are finally chopped off and burnt as wood in the fire of judgment, to finally at least yield some ash for the use to fertilize and clean the bad and meager ground.

[3] Who begins to awaken and educate his children by the mind, begins to build a house at the roof and scoops water in a bucket

full of holes. It will be wet, for as long the scooper will be busy with such a vain work; however, there will never be a drop of living water left therein, and with the wonderful expressions of the soul-life there will be nothing for a long time to come. The vessel full of holes had to be blocked off one by one requiring a great deal of work, until it will hold the water. But how easily does a little not properly set plug gets bad, and in time the vessel can become completely life-water empty!

[4] It should be understood as follows: A mind educated person can by a lot of self-denial bring it to an effective, subsequent education of the heart; but if he is not very careful and does not pay attention to the many stoppers, with which he patched up the many holes (earthly weaknesses) of his life-vessel, he will soonest convince himself, how the accumulated life-water has left him, and soon he will convince himself how he unnoticeably became the old person again, without any inner life-content!

[5] Therefore I above all recommended to you neighborly love, which comes from the love to God! Since only this can make from your total wrongness, again people in My order. Do not be blinded by the world; since everything it gives you, is death and judgment, a fruit of the pure mind! Only love can transform you into life!

[6] Therefore I have come into this world, to show you the right turnaround back to My order and the right way, to stay with it until achieving the true rebirth of the spirit in the soul, after which no evil fallback is thinkable and possible anymore.

[7] This must be introduced to you now, since those, who once became wrong, are helped only a little with the patched up turnaround of the soul. The soul first must completely turn around, before the rebirth of the spirit in the soul can take place; however, the plugged and patched up, thus on the right path brought better soul-state, is not lasting, because by the power of the world and its temporary advantages, a purely patched up soul only too easily falls back into its old accustomed wrongness.

[8] To prevent this from happening, I have paved the new way, for My spirit, which I now place as a spark of My Father-love into the heart of each soul, becomes fed through your love to Me, and from there truly and active for the neighbor, and must grow in your soul and after reaching the right greatness and power, to fully unite with the improved soul and become one with it, which act should and shall be called the rebirth of the spirit.

[9] Who has achieved this, is of course standing incomparable higher than an even so perfect soul on its own, who also can do a lot, however, forever not nearly all this, what is awaiting the completely reborn.

[10] However, this spark of My love is only then placed into the heart of a human soul in full, if a person has heard My word and has accepted it in his heart faithfully and with all love as the truth; as long this is not the case, not even a most advanced perfected person can reach the rebirth of the spirit. Since without My word, which I speak to you now, the spark of My love cannot enter the heart of your soul, and if absent, it can also not grow and prosper in a soul and therefore also not be reborn.

[11] However, in future, also the children, if signed and baptized in My word and in My name, they will receive the spirit-spark of My love in the heart of their souls; but it will not grow when educated wrongly, however, certainly with an upbringing according to My to you most clearly explained order, where above all the heart, and from there correspondingly the mind, should be educated. However, the heart is to be educated by true love and by gentleness and patience.

[12] Teach from early on the children to love the Father in heaven, show them how good and loving He is, how He has created everything there is, most good, beautiful and wise to the best for the people, and how He is fond of especially the little children who love Him above all! At each special occasion make them attentive, that all this is arranged by the Father in heaven who makes this take place and let it happen, then you will turn the hearts of the little ones to Me, and your easy effort

will soon bear you the most gold fruit, otherwise, however, thorns and thistles, on which will grow neither grapes nor figs!

[13] But tell Me now openly, if you now comprehend, how and for what reason these our black brothers are able to perform such deeds, which for the time being were and had to be a puzzling miracle to you!”

53. CORRECT UNDERSTANDING AND READING OF THOUGHTS

[1] Says the leader of the Moors: “Lord, You almighty and all wise God! I and my companions have understood You quite well; but whether also the whites, for whom You actually has given this explanation, have understood this in the right sense and in the right spirit, I of course cannot say for sure! How it seems to me, for a few, some of the things might still be unclear!

[2] However, if somebody is still pressed by something, he will announce himself, if he is more interested about the pure recognition, than the thereby putatively forfeited mind’s honor! Because also among these whites there probably will be some, who do not ask anything, since they do not want to betray their mind’s weakness by the question! Now, as a black I would like to give to them the advice, to rather let go of the trifle honor of the mind and declare themselves for the pure truth, which can only result from a complete understanding, since a misunderstood truth can be for the disciples nothing better than a flat lie; since a misunderstood truth is just as useless to anyone than a lie!

[3] Nobody will make actual use of a recognized lie, hence it can neither harm him nor be of any use to him; however, a misunderstood truth can also be of no use to anybody, because as misunderstood it can either brought to no use at all or at least applied wrongly, and is in such regard for the user by no means better than a blatant, perfect lie.

[4] This would be my opinion; perhaps somebody has a better

one, and I will be glad to be silent and become an attentive listener!”

[5] I said: “Your remark was quite good and very true. I Myself know a few here, who did not understand this My explanation deeply enough; but they are ashamed to betray the weakness of their mind by a question and are therefore rather content with half an understanding.”

[6] When I made this remark, several immediately asked, whether it was them who did not understand this marvelous explanation deep enough. But I kept quite. Then also Cyrenius asked Me quite fearful, if also he did not comprehend this truth deeply and truthfully enough.

[7] I then said: “Not only you, but most of you! Only two of My disciples fully understood this My Explanation about the perfect state of the soul. All the others, with exception of the Moors, not! You only have a general idea of this issue but not at all a clear conception, which with quite a few of you even the leader saw and noticed, making his remark perfectly well placed.

[8] Yes, a primordial life perfected soul does, alongside the wondrous effectuating power as master over all creatures of this earth, also have this particular property, to recognize and even to see in specific excited moments the thoughts of people and what goes on in their hearts; since the strongly satisfied outer life-sphere of such a person immediately recognizes this in the outer life-sphere of another person, and therefore such soul-life-perfected persons can absolutely not be deceived. With their highly intensive outer life-sphere they often recognize from a very far distance, what a person who approaches them, thinks or what he wants.

[9] If an enemy approaches, such soul-life-perfected people can, by the unification of their outer life-sphere, let him flee in panic, in the same manner as they lift a mighty tree out of the earth by the unification of their life-spheres, or transporting the immense rock, or finally as you have seen them making a fire, which straight away seized a sizeable bush and turned it in to ashes.

[10] Therefore nobody of you should be annoyed, if the black

leader tells you a few things and hits you like a best learned shooter his target; since your outer life-sphere tells him, brightly illuminated, even your most inner thoughts, as long as they are unified with the slightest will. The pure brain thoughts, however, which are actually no thoughts, they do not recognize, since such thoughts consist only of pure little brain-board-pictures and do not have a life; but the thoughts of the heart they recognize most correctly, especially if they find themselves in a somewhat heart excited state, like now.”

54. THE MEANING OF THE RADIANT SPHERE OF LIFE

[1] (The Lord:) “You still don’t understand living-clear sufficiently, what in depth the outer life-sphere of the soul means, and how this power can express itself by effectuating, feeling, hearing and even seeing! For your ability to comprehend this is a little difficult to understand, because in the outer, for your flesh eye visible world, no suitable example can be set up, since all spiritual matters are very difficult to be dressed in a material picture. However, since you understand this highly important matter not sufficiently, I will illuminate this for you some more. But you must gather your senses rather firmly, otherwise you will again not grasp this most important matter of life deeply enough!

[2] That this is most important, you can see and recognize from the fact, that I kept the explanation of this primordial life secret for last of our current visit. Nevertheless the things that I have shown to you the previous 7 days and also earlier at other locations are still the greatest. And because of this, which was the most important until now, all the rest has been shown to you, because without these miraculous things that have happened and the preparations it would be impossible for you to understand even the smallest part of it.

[3] But why do I rate this as most important? This is very easy to guess and to see! Who truly wants to better his life and uplift it to the actual life, he first have to recognize it in all its parts,

how it exists, how it expresses itself, how it under certain conditions and processes expresses itself so or so; how it, if spoiled and made wrong, can be bettered again and how a fully bettered life condition can be maintained and also be transplanted to his fellowmen, so that finally there can be one Shepherd and one herd.

[4] However, that for a true person the full recognition of life is the most important, was realized and stated by the wisest men of all nations at all times; they only found the way to it very troublesome and difficult or in most cases not at all. But now, I as a Lord and Master of all life and being since eternity, have come to you Myself and have in a miraculous manner brought everything together on this place which is to the largest part still detached from the world, to put before your eyes the true life-being as clear and tangible as possible, and in time and with the right patience you will understand this; but then it will also be your duty, to explain to your fellowman as thoroughly as possible what you have understood!

[5] Because, in a country where only one or two persons see, understand and make use of it for themselves, it will be just as much useful to them, like a wise man in a madhouse among all the fools or in a donkey- or ox stable! Will they understand the wise man, if he out of his innermost depth of wisdom will tell them with the friendliest words the most elevated teachings?!

[6] A wise man can only be recognized and understood by wise men! From the life of animals and actual fools nothing can be made, since what must become of it, has been provided for by My everlasting order; however, from the life of people, you can grow anything along the right way of truth, love, patience and wisdom!

[7] And if you have grown from the people true brothers and friends for you, who in time will resemble you in the recognition of life, you will also enjoy true happiness and bliss among each other and become strong in all that is good, which will be easy for you to execute! Since one-hundred arms can do more than just one, one-hundred eyes, pointed into all

directions, see more than two, and the outer life-sphere of thousands united, is quite a strange powerful lever to avert all kinds of dangers and evils, irrespective from which side they may come, and what name they might have.”

55. THE POWER OF SOMEONE WHO IS PERFECTED IN LOVE

[1] (The Lord:) “You have seen the power of the combined effectuation through the unification of the outer life-sphere of several of these now our Moors! How much normal manpower would be required, to lift such a tree like the old cedar there, including the heavy earth lump?! How much natural manpower could have moved or rolled this very large and exceedingly heavy rock from its former place?! The few Moors have pushed or actually carried it in front of your eyes through the air! From this undeniable fact you had to conclude, what power and strength must lie in the unified outer life-sphere of a nature-perfected soul!

[2] If already these Moors, who didn’t know anything about the power and strength of My name, could have performed such extraordinary things by only the power of their unified outer life-sphere of their nature-perfected souls, how much bigger things should you be able to perform, if you could work through My word and through the almighty spirit of My Love in your unified outer life-spheres of your perfected souls!

[3] Truly, truly, I say to you: Not only such trees and rocks, but you could move whole mountains, if you according to the clear insight of your wise hearts regard it as necessary; however, whatever is necessary, you would certainly in every moment get to know through My spirit in you, which is always present through My always living word in the heart of your souls!

[4] Would this not be an extremely desirable state of a perfected person in My name, and even more desirable of a whole society or even a nation?

[5] Its possible effectuation lies before your eyes, and it is

therefore extremely necessary, that you as My closest disciples completely recognizes this most important state in you and to also teach all other people in the right manner to recognize this! Since who has a light, should not put it underneath a basket, where it's the darkness illuminating rays are of no use to anybody, but the light should be put on a clear table, from where it can illuminate all present!

[6] Indeed, it is easy to put a natural light on a table! With the light for heart and soul it is surely incomparable more difficult; however, a good and firm will brings also this about, and with My certain help in such most important matters of life, even with less effort than you might think. Of course, everybody must first own what he wants to give to his neighbor, otherwise he resembles a blind who wants to lead another blind; if they finally reach a ditch, both will fall into it!

[7] Hopefully I now have sufficiently explained to you the greatest importance of such a state of the true life-strength of a perfected human soul and have also showed to you the greatest importance of a full self-recognition, which with children must be brought about by a correct upbringing, and can be accomplished to the largest extend in already spoiled people who are not to be blamed for it, by the right measure of humility and patience and mainly through the true, active love to God and therefrom to the neighbor. The deeds of the soul life strong Moors, which should lead you to the right self-recognition, I already have explained to you, which you, however, have not sufficiently understood in all its life depth. It is therefore now up to you, for the sake of the importance of the matter, to ask and by the question express yourself, where and what you are still lacking!

[8] You first must vividly feel what you are lacking, otherwise you could never be concerned about it with your freest will; because if someone has lost something and he doesn't know about it, will he ever begin to search for what he has lost? One therefore has to feel quite vividly that one has lost something, and of what it consists of what is lacking, and also must

recognize the great value of what is lost, otherwise one will not begin to search with the necessary living zeal!”

56. HUNGERING FOR SPIRITUAL FOOD

[1] (The Lord:) “The ordinary worldly person can of course not even dream about the true and highest life’s value; since, if his belly is sufficiently provided for, why should he be concerned about all the other important issues of life?! He then has plenty to eat and also to drink if he is thirsty, has a beautiful and comfortable dwelling, a soft bed, nice clothes and still many other luxuries of life, and also does not have any shortage of beautiful and appealing maidens and other lavishness things! What should such a holder of earthly goods still be lacking?!

[2] The poor beggars must of course reach for the shelter of all kinds of wisdom and recognition which is continuously provided to them by their hungry imagination, to win over the favor of any rich to live off him and entertain him in return; however, about all this nothing can be regarded as true, other than the need of the hungry wise and the sluggishness of his hands, and that he rather fills his hungry stomach with his effortless imagination and fantasy about any God and about the everlasting life of the human soul, than with the more troublesome work of his hands!

[3] See and recognize from this life true picture, if someone with ample earthly possessions is lacking anything! What does the most important self-recognition means to him, while without it a true recognition of God is unthinkable? Will he ever, what he surely is lacking in the highest degree, ever begin to look for? Most certainly not; since he suffers no hunger and no thirst, which are supposedly the levers, by which the work shy, poor beggars are encouraged to wisdom and knowledge!

[4] How could he otherwise recognize what he is lacking for a true life? Only hunger and thirst – according to the well provided for indulger’s opinion – are the only motives for any activity; who thus do not suffer any hunger or thirst, does not

need to look for any wisdom! In short, who according to his own opinion does not have anything lacking, also has no desire for anything, and who has lost nothing, what should he search for as if he has lost something?!

[5] It is the same with a teaching, which has been delivered. Who thinks that he has understood it completely, will not ask any further questions. The satisfied does not ask for more food; if he gets hungry again, then he will of course look again for food. But what will he do if the food master is not present? Will he be able to prepare a meal for himself?

[6] Therefore every one of you should now look for food, for as long the food master is among you! When he will return again from where he has come, many will begin to look for the right food; but then it will be difficult to obtain some.

[7] Many of you who are now around Me, are earthly well provided for and immensely rich with all kind of earthly treasures and now strive with all zeal after spiritual food, which is not brought to the daylight from the gold tunnels of the earth! It will be given to you in abundance. However, you should not think that quantity is sufficient to clearly understand everything.

[8] You quite well understand each word spoken to you by Me, as far you as people can understand it; however, everything which is hidden therein in endless abundance, you will not be able to understand! You also do not ask about it, because you do not recognize what you do not understand! But why do you not recognize it, and why did Oubratouvishar recognize this about you, that you have not fully understood My explanation? Because his primordial perfected outer soul-life-ether penetrates your rather still imperfect quite easily, just like you can feel in an even pitch dark night if some ones head has many hairs or if he is bald, if you touch his head with your hands!

[9] With your still very weak outer life-sphere your feeling starts only there, where the body begins; beyond this your souls do not have any little spark of feeling!”

57. THE MIRACULOUS POWER OF THOSE REBORN

[1] (The Lord:) “The ability of these Moors to feel and to notice can in a greater excitement reach for many hours walking, and they therefore can easily determine, of which type of spirit those are who approach them. However, they will not be able to recognize a deeper spiritual being in someone, but the actual state of the soul quite indeed!

[2] When they arrived this morning here, they recognized My soul and its wisdom and power from already quite a distance; they only could not recognize the spirit in the soul, since the spirit of God can only be recognized by another spirit out of God. For that I first had to place a spark in their hearts by My word; and when the spark in a perfected soul found in abundance the right food, it became stronger and soon they recognized also Me in My spirit and are now more certain than you are, with whom they are dealing in Me.

[3] All this is the result of a perfect soul. Your souls will, except for a few, as souls for themselves never reach such recognition, but they will, by My exceeding love for you, be purified, so that they will become highly suitable for the full admission of My spirit. If you then become spiritually reborn, it will not be by your merit, but only by My love, mercy and compassion, and you will be able to do bigger things than these Moors, but not out of the power of your perfect souls, but from the power of My spirit penetrating your weak souls, by which of course also your souls become forever life stronger!

[4] However, I do not want to make miracle performers out of you, but true benefactors for the people! If My awakened spirit in you becomes fully active, it will become light and illuminated in your mind, and thereby you will along quite natural ways learn about the powers of nature and make its spirit serviceable to you or respectively the soul-like primordial specific substances; thereby you will achieve great earthly life advantages, which you however should use for poorer mankind!

[5] If the great advantages, to which My spirit will lead you, are

used within My order, it will bring you a thousandfold blessing in everything; should you however in time begin to use them against My order selfishly, they will become for the people the brooding place for all kind of conceivable earthly evil!

[6] What I now speak to you, I also speak to all those, who will follow you in a thousand and another thousand years, perhaps a few years more or less. After that another layer comes to ferment and work the earth, with and without people; since the earth is large and there are many spirits who are waiting to be freed from judgment.

[7] Every reborn can also perform miracles, but not like these Moors without the recognition of My name and My will, however, with the full recognition of My name and My will and My unchanging order. Because if someone wanted something different, it could not happen, since My spirit in him would not provide him with the strength; since then only the soul on her own would be wanting, because the spirit could never want something against My will!

[8] However, through the rebirth of the spirit in the soul, the soul does not lose her own, free will and her recognition in the rows of the big creation, which will go forth and forth out of My love, out of My wisdom, order, power and strength.”

58. RELATION BETWEEN SOUL AND SPIRIT

[1] (The Lord:) “The soul will always relate to the spirit, like the earthly body to the soul. The body of an even still so perfect soul has in a certain way also its own pleasure will, by which the soul can be spoiled, if she adheres to it. A proper educated soul will never adhere to the gluttonous will of the body and always stay a master over its body; but with spoiled souls such is quite possible.

[2] Between soul and spirit, however, there always exists a relationship like between a primordial perfect soul and its body. The body on its own can have desires as many as it wants, and tempt the soul for allowance and satisfaction with all its often

rather sharp stings, but the perfect soul will always say an effective ‘no’ to it! And precisely the same does My spirit in the soul, in which it merged completely!

[3] As long as the soul adheres completely to the will of its spirit, everything takes place exactly according to the will of the spirit, what is also My will; however, if the soul because of her backward recollection wants a little more sensuous things, in such moments the spirit retreats and leaves the execution of the desire over to the soul only, from which normally nothing happens, especially if the will of accomplishment contains effectively very little or often even nothing at all of any spiritual content.

[4] The soul, soon noticing her own weakness and clumsiness, will not before long let go of her self-desire dreams, reunites again with the spirit most intensely and let his will prevail. Then there is of course order and strength and power in all fullness again.”

[5] Asks finally again Cyrenius, however a little meekly: “Lord, by Your many words and admonishing, I have landed in a gorge in which I have noticed a main shortcoming of my recognition and notices it even better now!

[6] You said earlier, that the individuality of the soul, even if Your spirit penetrates and takes it over completely, has not gone over to the spirit to such an extent that the soul could not separate from it for certain moments. Thus the soul still keeps its individuality and even can think and will for itself like before the rebirth of the spirit in its substantial being.

[7] If the soul could have wanted and think before, it also must have a free, individual ability of recognition, and must therefore also recognize the immense advantage of this what is flowing into the soul from its spirit, compared to this what its own senses can provide. If the soul necessarily recognizes this, how is it possible that she ever want to think and want for herself, what the spirit has not breathed into her before?! I find in the continuous individualistic ability to think, to will and to recognize an imperfection of the spiritual being of man.

[8] It also sounds strange, that the actually newly reborn soul in her spirit – who is supposed to be much stronger than the pure, primordial perfect soul of one of these Moors with whom there is still no question of rebirth and with whom there was never one before – can do much less than a pure, primordial perfect soul of one of these Moors! If such souls want something, it happens; but if a in her spirit reborn soul – what certainly is more than just a primordial perfect soul – want to do something out of herself, it cannot happen, because the spirit does not want it!

[9] The souls of these Moors will most likely also have the wondrous ability in the beyond, to at least be able to also perform the same wondrous things as here; however, our souls reborn in the spirit should then, so to speak for their own private pleasure, be able to do nothing? For that I find no reason, nor any for the reason acceptable clue. Thus have the mercy, to put this matter for us whites into a somewhat brighter light; since this is an indigestible food for us!”

59. BRAINS AND SOUL

[1] I said: “I already have shown to you before how a soul and finally the whole person through a wrong upbringing, loses all human, Me resembling marvelous abilities! When you with a child first educate the mind, and the brain is not yet two thirds ripe developed and is despite this bothered to correspondingly adsorb in pictures an immense quantity of words, pictures and figures prematurely onto the still very soft and still watery little brain boards which are still busy with the best development, these little boards become on the one hand too hardened and on the other hand are brought into total disorder by too strong memory exercises, whereby such little children later as youth and still later as men are plagued by constant headaches, from which they for the rest of their lives cannot be completely freed.

[2] The whole brain has long ago already been pasted up with all kinds of signs and has been made completely unreceptive for

the admission of the very subtle signs, which first rise from the heart and should be impressed on the very receptive little brain boards. Even if later the soul is given some higher spiritual truth by the heart, she does not have any hold, and the soul cannot grasp it, because this truth cannot be presented graphically to the soul for longer than a moment.

[3] In addition the soul has a lot of physical, coarse worldly pictures like a dense forest in front of her and impossibly can see the quite tender, small, endless many, only very weak impressed signs. If she for moments sees the very subtle engraved misty pictures, which have risen out of the heart, it appears to her as a disfigured picture, which she impossibly can comprehend and see it clearly enough, since the coarse physical pictures come to stand in front of the spiritual figures and partly cover and partly destroy it.

[4] Now you would think and say: ‘Yes, why must the soul look at specifically the little brain boards? She should directly deal with the heart and thus enter her spiritual light!’ Would be fine, if it was possible to completely transform the once set life order without harming life itself!

[5] Would it also be suitable to give to someone, who, by whatever reason became blind already in the mother’s womb or later on earth, a pair of eyes on the chin or on the forehead or on the nose? This would be quite alright, if such different located eyes would also not require a completely different body organism!

[6] With the mechanism of the human body there does exist such a strict, mathematical order, according to which everything at its location may not be relocated by one hair, without a complete change of the whole organism of the body. It is therefore completely impossible, to subjoin the sensory tools for someone at another location of the body, without totally reshaping the whole body, to give it another form and a complete different inner construction.

[7] Just like you cannot give to the body relocated senses, instead of the ones already existing at the right place, because of

reasons given, it is to a much greater extend the same with the soul, which is a still much more tender, spiritual organism! She can only see and hear through the brain of the body; the other impressions, which, however, are blunt and unexplainable, the soul of course can also perceive with other nerves, but they must nevertheless be uninterruptedly connected to the brain cells, otherwise the palate has no sense of taste and the nose has no sense of smell.”

60. THE RIGHT DEVELOPMENT OF THE BRAINS

[1] (The Lord:) “For as long the soul lives inside the body, the brain stays the main viewing organ of the soul. If it is correctly developed, the soul will clearly and correctly see the life pictures risen from the heart and engraved into the brain and will also think, conclude and act accordingly; even if the soul in certain enraptured moments is able to have a vision for herself out of the pit of the stomach by the laying on of hands by a person with a strong faith and will, like Zorel was an example for you, it is of little or no use to her for the real life, because in the dark dwelling of her flesh life she cannot have even the slightest recollection of it.

[2] Wherever the brain of the head (the brain of the physical head) is not involved during any means of viewing and observation of the soul, the soul will have no recollection of it, perhaps only a vague notion; since this, what the soul adsorbs into her brain (the substantial-soul-like brain), she cannot see, just like the body does not have a sight which could see on the inside, everything which is engraved in pictures on the many little brain boards taken in by the eyes and ears. This can only be seen by the soul, which is inside of everything flesh.

[3] However, what is left correspondingly in the soul-like brain, the soul cannot see with her eyes and not hear with her ears, since her eyes and ears are directed only outwardly like those of the body; the corresponding pictures of the soul-like brain can only be viewed by the spirit in the soul, which is also the reason

why a person can only then recognized something purely spiritual, if the spirit has fully awakened in the soul and penetrated it.

[4] However, what is inside the spirit, is recognized by Me and out of Me again in the spirit, which is with Me or My spirit identical; since it is My effigy in the soul, like the sun places its full effigy into a mirror.

[5] Thus, for as long a soul lives inside her body, a properly developed body brain is absolutely necessary for a truthful, bright viewing; but a spoiled brain is of no use to her for any spiritual viewing, just as the viewing through the pit of the stomach is of no use to her, because she has no recollection of it, as shown earlier. Even if it remains stuck in her spiritual brain forever, she still has no eye and no ear for it, what only has the awakened spirit in her.

[6] If therefore the brain is properly developed out of the heart according to My order and the spiritual life pictures, which are a light, are engraved into the small brain boards before the material pictures, the subsequent outside-world pictures are enlightened and become in all its parts easily understandable and are comprehended according to the true wisdom. And this therefrom penetrating light does not only fill the entire human organism, but streams in spiritual bright rays far beyond it and by that forms the outer life-sphere, with which a person, when it in time has necessarily become more dense and powerful, can effectuate in the outer world wondrous things even without the rebirth of the spirit, as you have seen such with our Moors.

[7] If, however, the brain of a person have been developed wrongly, and on its little brain boards are only sticking matt silhouettes, for which the soul finally has to use all her life light to be able to see them and to recognize them only very superficially by their extreme outlines, the soul never can become illuminating, so that she from her abundance of light can form an outer life-sphere.

[8] Only by the proper humility, by the most strongest love for God and to the neighbor and by a special striving for spiritual

things, the material pictures in the brain become illuminated and are thereby turned into spiritual objects, and the brain is thereby brought to some order. However, during its life in the body never to such order, as you have seen it with these Moors.

[9] But it doesn't matter; since one reborn from you is for Me more pleasing than 99 of such nature perfect souls, who never needed penance. Since My true children must grow strong from their weaknesses!

[10] Have you, My Cyrenius, understood this all quite well, and are your questions answered?"

61. CYRENIUS ASKS HOW THE BRAIN WORKS

[1] Says Cyrenius: "Lord, sincerely felt and spoken, to understand this Your explanation completely right, one had to have a better understanding of the brain in the human head, since otherwise it is impossible to properly imagine the little brain boards, on which either according to a correct manner of education the soul-like spiritual pictures or with a bad and wrong manner of education the material, coarse world pictures are drawn first, and even less so how on such little boards the different pictures of life are drawn.

[2] If it would please You, o Lord, since all things are possible for You – give us an example or effigy of a little brain board, from the front as well as the back of the head, so that also we can obtain a correct picture of what You Yourself advised as very important to recognize?! Because if one cannot have a proper idea of a matter underlying such an immensely important teaching, apparently the understanding of the whole subject must suffer because of it!

[3] Our souls surely are still way too lightless, to properly evaluate the little brain boards according to their form as well as their functioning or view them clairvoyantly so that we can have the right idea about it. It is therefore necessary that we weak white souls are given at least the right knowledge of this organism of our body, on whose correct education the welfare

or misfortune of man depends nearly all alone. If, as already said, it pleases You, o Lord, I would like to see one or more of these little brain boards; but also, if feasible, with the right and also with the incorrect drawings!”

[4] I said: “I knew that I will bring you to this point, where you recognize the shortcomings within yourself and feel a proper need for it, to fill the gaps in you; and see, this your request pleases Me more than another, were you nearly became angry, when I mentioned, that the soul of an even totally reborn person on its own will never be able to perform miracles in the physical world, like a primordial unspoiled soul can do out of herself!

[5] I in fact told you, that a reborn person is able to do, what I Myself can do, of course only in and through My order of eternity; but with that, it seemed, that you were not completely satisfied! But you did not consider that these primordial perfect souls also can do nothing else, than what is allowable and useful within My order.

[6] Since everything, what they effectuate with the power of their soul’s outer life-sphere, appearing to you as wondrous, is something, which is just as natural as it is natural, that this earth here is covered with moss and grass and the water of this inland sea stays in the large pit according to its inherent gravity. If you regard both of these mentioned appearances of nature in order and as quite natural, you will also regard it in order and as quite natural, what these primordial perfect souls must be able to perform regarding their earthly life-sphere and for the land in which they are living.

[7] These Moors do have a very black skin, but in return an even more brightly illuminated soul. To the biggest part they also know the main organs of their inner main body life’s organism, and the tiny brain boards are also well known to them; since their primordial souls can view their body from the inside, and if something in it is ill, they can see the location where the illness is sitting, and also of what the illness consists.

[8] With their outer life-sphere, which acts very strongly in such moments, they soon find the herb, by which application the

illness can be in this or that way be eliminated. Only if with them the tendons and instep veins become decayed and floppy and thicker the blood, they believe that their does not exist any herb, to counter the general ailment of the body which, because of quite natural reasons is becoming old and weak and tired and sluggish; then it is best that the soul provides for herself, gathers herself and leave the body which has become ugly and completely useless and go, free of all earthly bonds, to the land of joy, which is located between sun, moon and earth forever and ever.

[9] These people therefore do not have the slightest fear of death, however, they fear an illness of the body, because thereby the strength of the soul is most actively demanded and the soul itself afterwards had to become weak and imperfect for some time.”

62. THE CONSEQUENCES OF LEWDNESS

[1] (The Lord:) “However, with regard to the virtuousness of the flesh and life and a true maiden chastity, there does not exist another nation on earth, which upholds this virtue more than these blacks, and to whom the vice of prostitution, lewdness and immorality is more foreign than again these Moors.

[2] But this is also something of the biggest importance of life; because if the white people would avoid this vice and perform the coitus only to awaken a fruit in the body of an orderly woman, I say to you: There would be not one among you who at least would not be clairvoyant! However, as it is customary among you, the man as well as the woman squanders the best forces by the often daily exhaustion of the most noble and soul related juices of life and therefore does not have any supply left, whereby finally a continuously intensified light could be building up in the soul!

[3] Thereby they are becoming continuously more and more sluggish and polyp-like hedonistic beings. They are seldom able of a bright thought and are fearful, cowardly, very materialistic,

moody and fickle, selfish, envious and jealous. With difficulty or not at all can they understand anything spiritual; since their imagination wanders always to the desire of the stinking flesh and is not capable to elevate themselves to anything higher and spiritual. And if here and there a few people exist among them, who at least during moments without any desire of the flesh are directing a few brief glances upwards, there immediately appears, like a black cloud in the sky, the flesh sensuous thoughts and cover the higher intentions to such an extent, that the soul forgets about it and immediately throw herself back into the stinking pool of flesh lust!

[4] With such people their not seldom quite good intentions are mostly of little or no value at all. They resemble mainly pigs that throw themselves with continues renewed avarice into the most disgusting sewage and wallow with their whole body therein, and are like dogs who with avarice eat again what they have vomited!

[5] Therefore it will be said to you in all truth, that male and female prostitutes, adulterers and adulteresses and fornicators of every kind and all genders will with great difficulty or not at all find an entrance to My kingdom!

[6] If you regard this in your heart a little too harsh, then you should try to reform such a flesh sensuous person! Start by drawing his attention to the commandments of God and say to him: 'Peace be with you, the kingdom of God has come close to you! Let go of your vice-like life, love God above all and your neighbor like yourself! Search for the truth, search for the kingdom of God in your heart's depth! Let go of the world and its loose matter, and try to awaken the life of the spirit in you! Pray, search and act according to the order of God' – and you will have directed these words to completely deaf ears! He will laugh at you, turn his back on you and say to you: 'Just go, pious fool, do not agitate me with your stupidity, otherwise you force me to hit you in the face!'

[7] Tell Me, what else would you undertake against such flesh debauchee, provided you do not hold any governmental powers

in your hands?! If you admonish him for the second time, you can expect an even greater offensiveness than the first time! What then?

[8] You will perform a miracle before his eyes! Will this perhaps open his ears and eyes? O look, this he will regard as magic and say to you: 'More of such entertaining performances!' But without any disadvantage for him, otherwise he will attack you and fight with you on life and death; and if you paralyze his limbs, he will serve you with the most hideous curses!

[9] Therefore a fornicator is not only a sensuous scapegoat, but in his agitated state also an evil person; he is full of the wild fire and blind and deaf for everything good and true of the spirit. You will much easier convert a robber than a real fornicator and adulterer."

63. THE BLESSING OF A PROCREATION ACCORDING TO THE GIVEN ORDER

[1] (The Lord:) "Now, wherever lecherousness and fornication has taken root as a true soul plague among the people, preaching the gospel has come to an end! Since how could one preach to deaf ears and perform signs before blind eyes? However, where the truth is not preached and cannot be preached anymore, which is the only way to strengthen and free the soul and illuminate her through and through, since the soul only can become active, full of love and also full of light by the truth, then, from which other source should light come into the soul, and from what else than the light of truth of the soul, should the outer life-sphere begin to form?!

[2] Where therefore lecherousness and fornication has taken strong roots in a nation, the people are without any outer life-sphere, sluggish, cowardly and indifferently and cannot find in anything an elevating and blessed pleasure and do not find any delight in a beautiful form or figure anymore. Their case is the mute, animal-like desirous pleasure of the flesh; for everything

else they either have a very small or no sense at all!

[3] Therefore, above all, take care, that this vice does not take root, and married couples should only do as much, as it is absolutely necessary to father a person!

[4] Who bothers his wife during her pregnancy, spoils the fruit already in the mother's womb and plants in it the spirit of unchastity; since the spirit who urges and agitates the couple to have sex beyond the natural norm, the same spirit is transferred to the fruit in an exponential manner.

[5] Therefore this also must be very carefully be considered during the act, that firstly the coitus is not performed out of common lecherousness, but out of true love and inclination of the souls, and secondly, that the woman who has conceived should not be touched and be left to rest for another seven weeks after given birth to the fruit!

[6] Children who have been conceived in this orderly manner and have ripened in the mother's womb without being bothered, will firstly come more soul perfected into this world, because the soul in a perfectly developed organism can surely much easier care for her spiritual progress than in a completely spoiled organism, where she continuously has to repair and patch; and secondly she herself is more pure and brighter, because she has not become impure by the lustful lecherous spirits, which by the often daily lustful repeated procreations in the flesh have been transferred into the embryo flesh and also the soul.

[7] How easy could a soul lift her heart already in the earliest most tender childhood, just like Samuel, to God out of true childlike, most innocent love! And what marvelous primordial basic signs will in this way out of the true depth of the heart be brightly illuminated engraved on the young, tender brain before any material signs, from which light a child explains to itself the right meaning and relation of the later pictures coming from the material world, because these pictures are so to speak planted on a brightly illuminated and life true ground and are expanded and parsed into individual components, as through

and through clearly illuminated, and thereby easily viewed and comprehended by the soul.

[8] With such children already from early on an outer life-sphere starts to develop, and soon they easily become clairvoyant, and everything in My order will begin to submit to their will. In comparison, what are the children already spoiled in the mother's womb? I say to you: Hardly more than seemingly animated shadow pictures of life! And what is the main reason for it? This, what I amply have showed, namely the result of lecherousness!

[9] Wherever My word is preached by you in later times, this teaching should not be missing; since it works the earth and ground of life and makes it free from all thorns and shrubs and thistles, from which no man has ever harvested any grapes nor figs. Once the ground and earth has been purified, it is easy to strew the noble life seed into the furrows which have been illuminated by the light of the heart and life warmed by the flame of love. Not one grain will fall, without germinating immediately and unfolding to carry a rich life fruit! However, on a wild, unclean soil, you can sow what you want, and you thereby will never achieve a blessed harvest!

[10] Since a person, carrying and spreading My word among the people, resembles a sower, who took the best grain and strew it onto all the ground wherever he went.

[11] Some fell onto the dry sand and rocks. But when the rains came, the little grains started to germinate very tenderly; however, the rains soon stopped, and the winds came and the suns glowing rays soon consumed all moisture of the hard ground, and by that also the tender, hardly germinated germs died and it came to no fruit.

[12] Another part fell beneath thorn bushes and had moisture and germinated well and came up; but only too soon it was overgrown and suffocated by the desires of the world, and thus did not produced any fruit.

[13] A part, however, fell on the path of human meanness; it did not even germinate, but was soon crushed and partly eaten by

the birds of the air! That it also did not produced any fruit, goes without saying.

[14] Only one part fell on a good earth; it germinated. Came up and produced a good and rich crop.

[15] This picture should serve you, so that you should recognize, that one should not throw the pearls to the pigs! Above all it says, first clean and fertilize the ground and only then start with the sowing of the living word seed, and one surly will not have made vain trouble during the heavy work! Since during the work of spreading My living word, a good will is not sufficient; it must also be guided by the right and true wisdom of life, otherwise the good and firm willing carrier of My word, could be compared to the prophet Bileam, whose donkey was more wise than he himself!

[16] See, you My friend Cyrenius, in all I have told you so far, you have not really received the answer as you have requested, and in your heart you are all the time on the verge to remind Me about it, but I say to you, fulfilling your desire immediately would not have been of much use to you, if I not had given you this beforehand.”

64. THE STRUCTURE OF THE HUMAN BRAINS

[1] (The Lord:) “But now let’s see, if we are able to obtain a little brain board for your better understanding! Indeed, we could obtain a couple of natural human heads from Rome by Raphael, since just now two main criminals have been beheaded in Rome, even on the Capitol, but with those skulls of villains it would help us only a little or nothing at all!

[2] It thus should happen that the angel should bring us four completely white and totally pure pebbles from any stream. From this we will try to present a human brain, as good this is possible with matter. – Raphael, go and bring what is required!”

[3] Raphael was suddenly invisible, for about seven moments long; but then all of a sudden he was again with us and placed four completely snow white pebbles in front of us, this is in

front of Me, on the table. Two were larger and two smaller, corresponding to the larger front head brain for illuminated pictures and the smaller back head brain for the signs of sound.

[4] When the stones lay before Me in the right order, I touched them, and they became transparent like a purest rock crystal. Thereupon I breathed at them and they parted in to millions of four sided little pyramids, each one consisting out of three outer surfaces and the base surface.

5] The two stones setup on My right represented the brain in a right order and the two to My left the brain with a wrong order, caused by a wrong upbringing and by other later bad influences, as it is normally the case among the people.

[6] However, there were not any pyramids visible, but alongside the few pyramids nearly all the stereo-metric forms, figures and types occurring in the art of measuring were visible, what could be seen even more precisely, when I, by breathing at the presented brain copies, enlarged them ten times, so that now four very large heaps were lying well arranged in front of the eyes of the most highly surprised disciples on the table, which Raphael rather quickly had to enlarge considerably for this purpose.

[7] I said: “Now you can look at the surface forms of all four brain masses separately and well distinguishable!

[8] See, here to the right the large brain of the forehead consisting of many quite real pyramids, and also the small brain of the back head with the same pyramids – they are just three times smaller, but for the reception of all the air vibration figures for the soul, still sufficiently large enough.

[9] However, also look at the two heaps to My left! There are already quite a number of different forms, as mentioned earlier, and nowhere they fit properly together; soon here and there, there is a hollow space and gives rise to all kinds of wrong reflections, as you will really see it happening later on. The back head, very similar as the forehead, has also 3 times smaller surface forms than the forehead. Just look at their shape!”

[10] Now all are coming closer to look at the artificially in an

enlarged scale presented brains formed from the four pebbles, where until now only the little pyramid board shapes are shown, without the inner chamber separations and without the connection of the little brain boards among each other.

[11] (The Lord:) “When all have gathered a possibly clear concept of this, I will divide the little brain boards into chambers by breathing at them again, and will connect the little boards of each chamber according to polarity and also the chambers themselves and also the forehead with the back head, so that thereby the little brain boards, no matter of which type they are, can receive pictures and signs.”

[12] Cyrenius cannot recover from all the amazement and finally says: “Ah, now there is a light in me! The ancient Egyptians, who built their schools in the shape of pyramids, were most likely still primordial perfected soul people, thus inwardly full of light, and therefore could see their body’s organic construction! These pyramid shapes, which are so important for the recognition of people, had to be visible to them, and therefore have chosen this shape to build their most extraordinary schoolhouses. Yes, they also would have seen and studied the construction of each brain board pyramid in great detail, and would also have given each pyramid inwardly the same construction in the largest scale, as they have found the organic construction of the brain board pyramids to be!

[13] Therefore such a pyramid had inwardly such a large number of all kinds of passages and chambers which even an already most learned person could impossibly decipher for which the one or other was good! Lord, did I judge this correctly?!”

[14] I said: “Completely right and correct; since it was like this, and the Egyptians therefore also, especially inwardly, have drawn all kinds of signs and scriptures and pictures on the walls, which correspondingly represented all kind of things, which man on this earth in the flesh has to go through and fight for, and how he has to recognize himself and how true love is the centre of all life.”

65. RELATION BETWEEN THE BRAIN IN THE FRONT AND BACK OF THE HEAD

[1] (The Lord:) “But now I will breathe at the brain heaps again, and you will see something similar to the two obelisks (tapered pillars) in front of the pyramids. The tapered pillars, however, were used for another purpose than the two little pillars in front of each little brain pyramid board; since the tapered pillars were only an indication that wisdom can be searched for inside the pyramids, to which of course only proven purified people were allowed to enter.

[2] The two little spikes in front of the little brain board surfaces, of which each little brain pyramid contains eight, are writing pencils, which by means of the movement of specific accompanying cerebral nerves, which are connected in an extremely artistic and organic-mechanically manner to the sight- and hearing nerves, the little boards are either written on according to a certain order or are illustrated with still other corresponding spiritual illuminated pictures.

[3] Pay special attention to everything that will happen! We are going to fill these writing pencils with a lymph and start our observations with the orderly brain! I want it that these little boards of this brain are properly illustrated in an orderly manner, like coming from the heart, with respect to the visual- as well as the hearing part.

[4] Now all directed their eyes with the greatest attention possible to our brain apparatus. I of course had to create the illuminated pictures also with the material bright light, otherwise with the light of the soul, My disciples with their eyes of the flesh, would be seeing as much as nothing. What is it that the most attentive observers can see?

[5] They observed how from the spikes reddish and bluish little stars spread over the little brain boards, namely in such order, that a quite sharp eye from these countless little stars on the little brain boards began to observe all kinds of the most wondrous little pictures.

[6] I of course effectuated for this moment that the eyes of the observers for some moments became the strongly enlarged property of a microscope, which was here absolutely necessary, because otherwise the observers would not have seen a great deal of these wondrous illuminated sign pictures and -shapes. The earlier tenfold enlargement of the little brain pyramids would not have been sufficient. Since they now could see the little brain boards a thousand times enlarged, they could see quite a lot.

[7] I now asked Cyrenius, what he could see. And he said: "Lord, wonder over wonder! From the very moveable and from the many organs over the whole length and all over the existing pre-pyramid obelisks, there were continuously streaming a large number of little stars of a light-red and light-blue color. Both the little feel horns of each of the four pyramid surfaces are incessantly active and travel with their spark-spraying points continuously on the pyramid surface facing them around with all assiduity and strew them with the little stars. One should think that from this apparently pointless and like accidental travelling on the three-sided-board nothing else than a scribbling is achieved; however, like growing by itself all kinds of proper pictures are forming and are lovely to look at.

[8] Now I notice that the two pillars are coming to rest once a surface has been fully illustrated. It is nearly unbelievable that these thousand times thousand signs and little pictures could have been drawn by the two living drawing pens on one such triangular board within such a short time! The shapes are still very small, although we can see such a surface in a full man's height; but these little pictures and little signs are so purified that one cannot imagine anything more pure and perfect.

[9] But why there are no little pictures to see on the little back brain boards which are very similar to those in the forehead? I see nothing then pure lines, dots and other hook-shaped signs, which I cannot understand. What does this mean?"

[10] I said: "These are signs of sounds and signs of words; they nevertheless are not standing on their own, but always are

connected by polarity with the surface of a little forehead brain board, and the sound or concept, which is drawn on the little boards of the back brain by means of lines, dots and other hook-shaped signs, is in the same moment also drawn on normally the downward facing pyramid-surfaces of the forehead as a corresponding little picture and as such presented to the soul for easy recognition.

[11] And to achieve this, a lot of nerve threads must be spun from each little brain pyramid of the back brain to the corresponding little pyramid of the forehead, otherwise nobody could have a clear perception of a described concept regarding a with words described area or activity.

[12] Inarticulate sound, also music, are not transferred, therefore no person can imagine a picture or anything else under a sound or under a harmony or a melody; because, as said, such sounds are not copied onto the little brain boards of the forehead, but stay independently on a corresponding pyramid surface of the back brain as lines, dots and little hooks.

[13] From the with pure sound filled back brain pyramid surfaces, however, nerve threads are running through the spinal marrow to the nerves of the stomach (ganglions) and from there to the heart, which is the reason that music, when completely pure, mainly effects the heart, seizes it and makes it not seldom tender and soft-feeling.

[14] However, forthcoming and rising from the heart, sound can still by the light of love as the little stars be drawn by the two little obelisks onto the little brain boards in shapes, and are not seldom true way pointers for the soul in the large halls of life of the spirit, and because of this reason a right and very pure music can be very helpful for a soul to unite with its spirit. Therefore learn and teach also the pure music, like once David pursued!

[15] That a purest music can do this, you can also derive from the fact, that you can place on the same locality enemies and friends, and then resound among them the purest music, and instead of the enemies you soon will see only cheerful friends. However, this effect is only brought about by the purest music;

an impure and dirty music effectuates exactly the opposite.

[16] You have now seen, how also sound on a detour still can be presented to the soul as something visible, although – not as material pictures, but still as higher spiritual shapes in the form of all kinds of signs, as one can also find similar ones on the old memorials of Egypt. I think, that what have been presented so far should be quite clear to you, and therefore I will not add anything to it, except that all this only occurs in a well arranged and unspoiled brain, fed by the orderly pre-developed heart, where the little brain boards are firstly illustrated with the light with all kinds of soul-like and spiritual shapes.”

66. CONNECTION OF THE SENSE ORGANS WITH THE BRAIN

[1] (The Lord:) “Since we now have observed and understood this quite important preliminary work, we must, to understand the matter fully, also direct a few glances to this, how finally also the soul impregnates onto the same little brain boards the pictures from the material world.

[2] Look here, the pictures coming through the eyes, should also be impregnated into the little brain boards! I want it, and it happens!

[3] Look now at especially the pencils or obelisks in front of two surfaces, how they suddenly have become very dark! It looks like if they have been filled with a very dark juice, and see, already all of us, while speaking, are drawn, line by line onto the little brain boards, alongside the trees and everything else what we can see! But not only unilaterally and dead, but three dimensional and like alive!

[4] Every movement we make, is here like thousand times thousand times reproduced, and still an earlier or also thousand earlier positions, stays recorded in the inner chambers of the pyramids, always visible to the eye of the soul, because it is always illuminated by the spiritual-soul-like light; and this gives effect to what we partly call ‘memory’ and partly call

‘recollection’, since it is recorded inside the brain pyramids. This, however, is multiplied by way of a multitude of reflexes, in such a way, that one can carry one and the same object uncountable times in oneself.

[5] In this manner, every person carries in his soul and still unpronounceable more in his spirit, the whole creation from the largest to the smallest, since it has been taken from there.

[6] If he looks at the stars or the moon or the sun, all this is anew drawn in his brain organs in the manner shown to you, and the soul looks at it and is quite pleased about it, and what has been seen is along the way of a multitude of reflexes engraved according to the right desire of the soul into the inner and most inner of the little brain pyramids, of course in a significant smaller scale, and can always be found again by the soul and perfectly looked at.

[7] All signs from the sphere of the outer world appear on their own as dark pictures; but the illuminated pictures from a better life sphere are standing behind them, and thereby they also in all parts are sufficiently illuminated, so that the soul in her inner most composition can look, study and understand them.

[8] In addition the forehead brain is continuously mainly connected to the smell- and taste nerves, like the back brain with the general feel nerves. They also leave on specific little brain boards certain markings, from which the soul immediately and very easily recognizes, how for example the one or other flower or ointment smells, or how this or that food, fruit or this and that drink tastes and also smells; since the construction is as such, that each little smell- and taste board is strictly connected by very sensitive nerves to one or other little object board.

[9] As soon as a known smell gets the smell nerves moving, it at the same time represents itself on the corresponding smell- or taste board, and from there the corresponding object board is immediately exited, and by that the soul quickly and easily recognizes, with which smell or taste she is dealing with. In the same manner the occurrence, in shape and composition, by which a feeling has been stirred, is represented to the soul by the

general sense of feel of the back head. However, all this only takes place, as shown here, with a highly orderly brain; with the other disorderly brain we will find here and there nearly no distant resemblances with this orderly brain, of which we soon will convince ourselves factually and practically.

[10] You will observe this second brain in its table construction and the irregularity of the main- and secondary chamber divisions, as already a mixture of all kinds of stereo-metric shapes, among them discs, balls, spheroids and other mushy lumps. The obelisks in front of the surfaces are mainly not visible; and where they are still visible, they appearing like completely atrophied and are seldom of any same size and strength!

[11] How can such a brain be useful to any soul? This brain, like it is presented to you now, came, because of reasons shown to you, as already wrecked out of the mother's womb. We will soon see which course it will follow regarding the usual worldly education and to which end and destination it will lead. All of you pay close attention to it!"

67. AN UNSPOILED AND A SPOILED BRAIN

[1] Asks Cyrenius somewhat surprised: "Lord, has this brain which You in a wondrous way have brought here with Your almightiness, also been spoiled in a mother's womb by the sensuous-lascivious after coitus?"

[2] I said: "But friend, what a question from you! Didn't I tell you before, that all this has only been presented as it exists in reality? Who could ever think that this artificially presented brain for the sake of the lecture could in all seriousness ever be spoiled in a mother's womb?! It only looks like it and therefore I said: This brain came already wrecked, as it shows, from the mother's womb! This is only a somewhat more precise dictation for the sake of better understanding and is therefore only a reproduced reality, but not a genitive, true reality! – Is this now clear to you?"

[3] Says Cyrenius: “Lord, forgive me my great stupidity; I already realize it!”

[4] I said: “This I knew already, that you will realize this; but to this your most silly question you were misled by a reminiscent worldly splash in your brain, and you can see from that, what sort of wisdom all so called worldly cleverness can offer a soul thirsting for the truth!

[5] All questions of the world-wise are in fact beyond all measure silly; what will then become of the answers which other world-wise give to the questioning world-wise? If their light is already night and darkness, how intense night and darkness will then their true night and darkness be!

[6] Therefore be aware of all wisdom of the world; since I say to you, that it is many times more dark and evil, than what the high-respected world-wisdom calls stupidity! Since a worldly stupid person can easily be helped, while a really from the roots world-wise cannot be helped at all or only through very difficult measures. You ask silly-wise if the actual world-wisdom cannot be helped at all? This lies with this second, spoiled brain clearly before you!

[7] Look at this on the right set up primordial orderly and completely unspoiled brain! Which clarity in its pictures! Everything light and light, and all shapes, including their outer framing, as well as its inner organic construction, can all be seen in the highest clarity and is fully developed! What clear concepts and images must such a soul obtain from all the things and relations! How wise and how in every respect life-powerful does such a person is standing there! Who of the number of the many world children can measure up to him?! What a primordial soul can do, you earlier had the opportunity to observe with these blacks!

[8] However, now we have a spoiled brain in front of us and we will see, how this by an additional, most bad and most wrong upbringing will be spoiled even more, and by that you will more than clearly recognize, how completely fruitless and without wisdom such a world-wisdom compares to a true, heavenly

organized wisdom! Just look at the chaos of such a brain! Nowhere an orderly coherence; here and there only a crippled little brain pyramid! The whole story looks rather like a gravel heap than a brain!

[9] The brain obtains such a shape already in the mother's womb! What should become of such a person in future, what progress will he make in the true school of life with such a brain?! Yes, if it was left at that and one would start with a careful education of the heart for about ten years! But where is the education of the heart?! It is not thought of anymore, and in the higher standing classes of nations it is completely absent! The lower classes of nations, however, do not know anyhow anything better about a soul- or life development than the dear animals of the woods, and their properties resemble completely those ancient inhabitants of the woods, who feed and live off the robbery and blood of other more gentle animals."

68. MISERY OF A WORLDLY SCIENTIST IN THE BEYOND

[1] (The Lord:) "Nevertheless how bad such people necessarily are, it is still possible to make a perfect person out of them, than out of such a real world-wise. Indeed, the world-wise have in some respect, this means aimed at a certain point, mainly on the selfish – quite a sharp mind, and the reason for this is because the little pyramid brain boards with each person at least in the centre of the brain, remain partly and line-wise functional, and this makes that many world-wise in mutual council, but only for purely earthly purposes, can produce something special; however, everything inner, deeper – spiritual remains nevertheless foreign to them. Since between the advantages of the world and those forever lasting of the spirit and the soul, remains an unbridgeable ravine, over which even the sharpest world-mind cannot ever find a bridge.

[2] And see, all this lies in the basic corruption of the human brain construction already in the mother's womb and thereafter

in the even worse upbringing of the heart and the soul; since, when at least after birth would follow a good education of the heart and the soul, the brain being corrupted in the mother's womb could to the largest part made functional again, and people could subsequently reach some illumination and life-strength, and by a continuous right humility and true goodness of the heart, of course only after years, the lost could completely be found and replaced again.

[3] Since who sows into a good earth, with him the harvest is certain; but if in the already meager and bad earth no fertilizer and even less a seed of the full truth of life is strewn, how and from where should a fruit or even a plentiful life harvest be expected?

[4] Yes, the worldly people understand it quite well, to rummage through the material earth like pigs and moles and to farm with all kinds of fruit. They make significant harvests, fill their stores and grain silos to the top and become full of proudness and haughtiness and therefore even harder and insensible towards poor people, who, because of the too great greed of the worldly rich and therefore powerful, were not given a span of land to support themselves.

[5] This, the worldly people understand quite excellently; but the earth of the spirit, the everlasting life, they leave fallow and are not troubled about it. If thorns and thistles grow rampant on it, concerns them only little or nothing, and it is therefore understandable, how and why the people of this earth, instead of getting better, increasingly become worse and more wretched. As long as they can build themselves magnificent palaces, lie on soft beds and own them, stuff their bellies with the best delicacies and dress their skin with soft, royal clothes, they have enough and are satisfied; since they have everything what their selfish flesh life can desire through the short time of their earthly life.

[6] But then comes the severely limping messenger, the bad illness and following it, death, and their impeded soul goes from a great fear over to an even greater fear, finally to full

desperation, to unconsciousness and finally to death, and laughing heirs divide the left-behind large treasures and abundances of the deceased world fool. And what does he have in the beyond? Nothing, than in every respect the greatest poverty, the greatest despair and the greatest, for this world indescribable misery, and not only just for a short while, but for your concept unthinkable long period of time, which you most certainly can describe with the term 'forever', which is also quite obvious; since from where should a soul, who never has worked or provided for anything else than for her body, takes the means, to perfect herself in a world, which can and must consist only of this, what a soul has inside herself and through her spiritual outer life-light-ether converts into a her surrounding residing world.

[7] In such a world her new, most love-giving life is supposed to have started in her very own spiritual kingdom. But how can this be possible if her heart is hardened and insensitive, she continuously sinks into annoyance feeling sorry for herself, breeding rage and revenge and if the spirit inside her is like completely dead, deaf, dumb and blind and as such can never view in a bright clear light the little brain-boards of the soul?

[8] And even if it was possible for such a heavenly spirit to rise in such an impeded soul, to see and feel all the things present in the brain of the soul, to help her to create a new living- and effectuating kingdom, he still wouldn't find anything in the brain of the soul, of which he, by helping her, could effectuate this. Since from all the material things what the soul in this world has absorbed into her flesh brain, impossibly anything could have been transferred to her own spiritual brain, because for such a transfer she totally lacks the main means of life, namely the light from lives' love flame to God and from it to the neighbor!"

69. CONSEQUENCES WHEN THE BRAIN DOES NOT POSSESS SPIRITUAL LIGHT

[1] (The Lord:) “Or place a still so bright mirror in a totally dark cellar, and ask yourself if the objects in the cellar will reflect on it? You will, if familiar with the cellar, with the senses of touch be able to observe the objects present according to type and recognize them even without a light; but you will place a mirror in vain into the dark cellar, since without a light it will never provide your eyes with a fine effigy of things in the cellar.

[2] It is the same case with a person with a worldly educated, spoiled and dark brain. From there no ray of light carrying the corresponding spiritual forms can go over from the dark material brain to the soul-like, thus already spiritual brain, and the totally stunted little brain boards of the soul are staying in themselves dark and empty; even if the light of the spirit would be falling on the little boards, it would serve the spirit and the soul equally as much as if someone would place a light in a completely empty, white painted room.

[3] What will he see in it? Nothing than empty walls! What studies would he be able to conduct therein? Certainly no other than those of a despairing boredom! And grasping the meaning he will say to himself: ‘Out, with you and your light from this empty room; since there is nothing! Let the light shine there where there is something to illuminate! With the light something must be effectuated, why illuminating four empty walls, which, full of light or without light, are still empty?!’

[4] If the eye light of the spirit looks at the little brain boards of the soul, and they are empty, then no light of a spiritual eye can penetrate anymore, and it stays dark therein as good as forever! If, however, it is undeniable so and not otherwise, where should a soul in the beyond get the building material from to build a world where she can live in? How will she do this? You think that I also be able to help such a poor soul? O yes, but never by a kind of weak, human, too early mercy, but only according to

My unchanging order, which, however has, as generally known, extremely long and full of the highest patient arms!

[5] Only after reaching the highest culmination point of the highest distress, in which the soul through the powerful pressure of all desperation will go over into a kind of glowing illumination, will out of the highest fear of her heart, thus out of her most binding heart, like from a all consuming fire essence little glowing sparks rise to her brain, and therefrom shadow pictures of her distress, her torture, her torment, her pain, her misery, her powerlessness, her desolation will form on her little brain boards; only then will she obtain some most meager ideas and after long periods of time will she be able, to begin, to form from such pitiful pictures a most meager world to live in!

[6] But nobody will envy her about such property, and again it will take a long time, until such a soul will effectuate an improvement of her conditional world of living. For that many violent means to actively enliven her heart will be required repeatedly! Only from the many and many distressful circumstances will such a soul obtain a copy of the at least many sad looking concepts in her about herself, and will thereof, thus on her own ground and in her own manner begin to bring order to herself, upon which she not that easily anymore can fall into the utmost distress and desperation!

[7] Now this, one already can with respect call a capital and an own harvest; but still, what limitation therein, what leanness and how insecure!

[8] If someone would leave little children, not yet able to speak, in a dense forest, it would be possible that the one or other would survive in the woods. Assume that a little male and a little female would have made it, because they were placed right below a fig tree whose fruit falling into their lap, would initially feed them until a certain age, when they, as complete wildlings, would start to also look for other food! They grow up and reach an adult age, father children, and within a few centuries a nation is formed; however, they would stay without any education and any revelation from above!

[9] Go to such a nation and inform yourself about its education, and you will convince yourself, that you will, instead of people, encounter animals who will be much wilder and more tearing than all tigers, hyenas, wolves and bears! Among them you will not find a language, but only an imitation of all kinds of sounds of nature, whereby they indicate to each other only their greed and their rawest intentions. They will eat any foreign people, animals and fruit raw – and when really hungry also themselves. Their activity will consist only in hunting for food.

[10] Only again after a few centuries they will have reached the borders of their country large rainforests and will make contact with any educated nation, who will drive them back into the forest and some will be taken prisoners and being educated, and assume that after repeated such cases and the return of some of the previously imprisoned, however now educated fellow countrymen, the whole tribe will in time get somewhat educated, which of course is still a far cry from any spiritual education!

[11] How long will such a nation still have to work, until they have achieved only an at least outer worldly culture, and still how long until your current spiritual level, meaning along the natural way when left only to themselves!”

70. DIFFICULTIES OF DEVELOPMENT OF A WORLDLY SOUL IN THE BEYOND

[1] (The Lord:) “Of course, through revelations from above the education of such a tribe of nature will progress much faster! However, a revelation in this world can be given much easier than to a soul in the beyond, who, as mentioned before, has not brought only one little spark to the beyond, what could only in some distant manner resemble something of a divine order.

[2] If such a totally physical soul in the beyond through countless distressing circumstances and inhuman afflictions finally gets to the point, where she has obtained certain concepts and ideas, and from the greater activity of her heart a matt light

enters her substantial brain, from which she according to her very limited imagination and her will can from a delusive emergency world to live, which of course for quite some time cannot have any permanence, because it is still too far away from the one truth and the divine order therefrom, only then it is possible, through missionaries, who, appearing completely similar to her, to visit her, and by very careful and unnoticeably as possible provide and enrich her with several and better concepts.

[3] And at this stage often another hundred earth years are a too short period of time, to bring the on this world entirely spoiled soul to only a very limited order of heaven.

[4] However, to promote her to higher than the lowest, first and pure wisdom heaven, is nearly impossible; since her brain never loses the sad first markings, from which from time to time still forming a sort of right for revenge and thoughts of revenge, which again leaves a picture in her now more and more enlightened brain and influences the heart of the soul to such an extent, that she recognizes that she is quite well, but that her comfortableness is by a far cry no substitute for everything what she had to endure up to now.

[5] She resembles an old Roman soldier, who, because of his age and his many wounds and scars, received a farm as a present from the emperor, on which he by the diligence of his hands can provide for himself quite comfortably. However, the old soldier still grumbles when looking at his wound scars, and says: 'Good is good, but much too little for me, who offered his life so many times for the emperor, for the nation and the fatherland! My neighbors never had to fight a mighty and evil enemy; they have a healthy and straight body and can easily work their fields. I also have male and female servants who help me with the work; but nevertheless I still have to work myself if I want something useful. I of course do not need to pay the emperor any taxes or the tenth for as long I live, and also not my children until the fifth generation, especially if one of my sons will carry the war armament for the emperor and the state. But

this would still be something, to have to pay the emperor any taxes! Nevertheless, even without taxes, this very respectable reward is by far not enough for me!’

[6] And also in this way the souls of the lower heaven are keeping on groaning, especially when they remember that they have endured a lot and now as blessed have to work themselves, and this with a lot of diligence on top of it, to provide for themselves the necessities of life just like once as people on earth, with the only unfortunate difference, that in the beyond they cannot gather any excessive abundance; since this is not allowed in the beyond, because the leaders of the societies know how to prevent this very carefully. And as such these blessed souls are never completely happy, because according to their nature, they always feel that they are missing something.

[7] Yes, of course there is pretty much that they are missing; but what’s missing is for most of them as good as forever not reachable, since the basic elements in them are not at all present. They resemble those people who would like to fly like the birds in the air and therefore are very sad, because such advantages properties are denied to them as people, which, however, so many unreasonable animals can enjoy to the highest degree.

[8] But to what use is such grief to the people? To fly they are lacking the basic elements, and despite all grief and despite all muttering they can never reach what the birds have, namely the marvelous, free flying.

[9] I now have shown you, My Cyrenius, and all of you very clearly, which consequences a soul has to suffer by her worldliness, because except for My anyhow everything encompassing order she cannot be helped in any way, except one had to cancel her being altogether and place a different being in its place, which, however, would serve the soul also no purpose!

[10] Every soul has to develop herself either easily here or laboriously in the beyond, for which the means are planted in her. If she misses it here, because she has allowed herself to be deceived too much by the world and its treasures, she has to do

it in the beyond. In which manner, I have already clearly shown to you and your heart's questions are sufficiently answered. Do not make too friendly faces for it, I still cannot help you and can make it impossibly differently, as it is made and set up; since three times three can never be seven, but will always remain only nine! The apple tree must forever carry apples and the fig tree must forever carry figs as fruit!"

71. A WRONG EDUCATION AFFECTS THE BRAIN

[1] (The Lord:) "To understand all this even better and more tangible, we will follow the development periods of this brain here to My left with the greatest attention!

[2] Until now it is completely unchanged to look at, as already spoiled in the mother's womb and born into this world. However, we soon will see what face and what color it will take on, when the child after about five years receives the first moves of a wrong upbringing, when one begins to bother its memory with all kinds of memorizing exercises and confuse it as much as possible.

[3] See, I want it that the first worldly concepts are engraved into the brain! Look very closely now, and you will easily notice, how the obelisks on one or the other quite absent-minded appearing little brain pyramids, begin to smear on the brain board with a very sluggish movement and with a very dark substance quite a meager picture of a matter!

[4] The first picture is nearly nothing else than an entirely, very senseless smearing to look at, which is the reason why the soul of such a child in the beginning cannot understand at all the concept of the matter given to it. It has to be told or shown to the child a hundred times until finally it can remember it, but only as an extremely dark image.

[5] The reason thereof lies firstly in the unripeness of the various, still quite well-arranged little pyramid brain boards. The writing pens (obelisks) installed in front of them are themselves too weak and unskilled – are coerced by outer force,

to draw without the necessary, from the soul initiated exercise and without the possession of the right substance, and this on the still raw, not properly prepared little boards which are not at all ready to draw on. Therefore the picture all the time trickles away again and must not seldom be redrawn a hundred times by the substantially abused obelisks, until the picture, although still very weak, sticks to the unripe board.

[6] And what does the soul then profits from such a pure shadow picture? She only sees the matt extreme outlines. About any deeper penetration into this matter itself with such a picture is by far not a possibility! Who could from a matt shadow of a person see, what the inner composition is of that person?! Through many and troublesome coercing and forcing, the useful little brain boards are to the biggest part messed up with black ink, and also the teachings of God are wedged into the brain like the multiplication tables, and the education of the soul consists only out of the breaks during the material mind wedging.

[7] Only after the young, afflicted person has completed his so called 'occupational' mind wedging (studies) and has taken up a position, his heart becomes a little more free; he searches for a girl which he likes, to take her as his wife. The short period of actually being in love is for the young person the best, since during its duration the person gets a little excited in his soul, although this is only a very subordinated excitement, which allows only for some light to enter his brain, and only with the aid of this little light he begins to understand a little more practically what he troublesome has learned over the years, and thereby he also becomes for a worldly position a somewhat more useful individual.

[8] However, people who are not in a way warmed in their souls by even such a love, are staying very selfish and stoic pedants, who later on do not rise one hair above their stereotype polluted little brain boards and rummage in nothing else than the shadow pictures of their brain, which number cannot be too large, and what is left, is dark, black and for the ability of the soul to see, purely not visible.

[9] The soul of such a stoic is therefore as good as blind. Just like any person with even the sharpest vision is completely blind in a pitch black night and in an emergency can only feel his way forward, also the soul of such a real selfish person cannot see anything, what is drawn on their little boards, and since with such a totally incorrect brain education, where only by repeated smudging of the brain board finally a very stereotype and plastically picture is stuck on it, and since no inner more active soul excitement is present, no light can for keeps rise into the brain, the soul is forced to only touch-searching her dark, but stereotype brain board pictures.

[10] However, since such a stunted soul can only obtain her wisdom by touch-searching her already written brain boards, it is quite understandable, why such a soul in all her activities will become so measured pedantic and stereotype-like and does not accept anything else, except for this what is most coarse and materialistic which she can touch and grasp with her hands. Finally such a soul regards even what she can see with her eyes in the outer world as an optical illusion, and what she hears as a lie; only what she can touch with her hands on all sides, she regards as a real truth. Regarding the state of wisdom and a higher spiritual culture of such a soul, everybody can imagine by himself quite easily, who only in some way has understood what I just have shown and sufficiently have explained.

[11] Look once more at the brain on the left! Right now it presents the dark chamber of wisdom of such a stereotype-like world-wise, and you, dear friend Cyrenius, equipped with very sharp eyes, speak, of everything you can see therein!"

72. THE BRAINS OF A WORLDLY SCIENTIST

[1] Says Cyrenius: “Lord, the brains in the front and the back of the head have a dark-gray color on its surface; deeper inside, despite the sunlight falling on to it, everything is black and dark, and the in between shining, white-gray spots are representing absolutely nothing. And with that I’m already at the end of my description of what can be seen. Only one question, allow me, o Lord, and this consists therein: In such a spoiled brain, what will become of the abundance of brain formations who do not have a pyramid-like structure?”

[2] I said: “They are for nothing; they are a true desert in the brain and only produce in the soul the unfortunate feeling of an infinitive none-knowledge and none-recognition. And if you wanted to begin to speak to such a soul about higher, meta-physical things and relations, you soon will receive the request to be silent about it; since if she has to think about it any further, she apparently will go nuts. Therefore you cannot speak to such people, because they impossibly can recognize and understand any of this, as you now can see the true reason for it. Even quite natural, physical things they only understand very difficult or not at all, not to mention spiritual and heavenly issues.

[3] See, an ox also has a mouth, in it a quite significant tongue and teeth and also has a voice. The result should be that he also should be able to learn to speak; just try it, if you within twenty years will bring an ox to the point, where he is able to only pronounce one monosyllable word! And despite this, I say it to you, so that it would be rather possible to make an ox talk, than to teach a person with such a spoiled brain something about extrasensory matters, because if you start talking about something what too much rises above his limited knowledge horizon, he will laugh at you quite good-naturedly and begin to regard you as a fool. And if you continue to bother him with such fairytale matters, he will become angry and throw you quite fiercely out of the door!”

[4] Says Cyrenius: “Yes, but how will it then be possible to

convey Your Word to such people, of whom there are countless many?”

[5] I said: “If you find with people whom you will visit, a sharing heart, and if they invite you into their houses, then stay and try above all to enliven their mildly alive souls! If you do this, the soul of such people will become increasingly more active, which will spread a light in the brain, and the warmth of this light will begin, to bring the little brain boards into a more acceptable order, and such people will then soon become more open for a higher teaching and in this way, step by step rise to an increasingly purer light.

[6] However, if you find a completely dead heart with them whom you are visiting, then quickly move on! Since you should not throw the pearls to the pigs! – Understand this quite well! Who is still unclear about something, now, should ask, and the right answer will be given to him! Otherwise the two brains can be discarded.”

[7] The old Marcus comes closer and says: “Lord, midday is near! Should I not start to prepare for lunch?”

[8] I said: “It is praiseworthy of you to ask Me about it; however, the midday meal for soul and spirit coming out of My mouth, has an incalculable greater value than your midday meal for the body! Therefore we first want to consume a few more spiritual dishes, and I will then let you know when the time is right to provide for a bodily midday meal! Good is good, but better is better!”

[9] With that Marcus is quite content and stays on with his sons, to see and to hear what will happen next.

73. THE ORIGIN OF SIN

[1] At the same time also Oubratouvishar comes to Me and says: “Lord, Lord, didn’t the white brothers know about what You just now have explained to them so wisely? With us, all praise to You, even our children know this; since they all can look into themselves and always have a great joy, if they can tell us something about the beautiful gardens which they from time to time can see in themselves. What have these white brothers done, that they are unable to make these most important observations? If they are lacking these most important abilities, then they are not real people anymore, but big apes, like they exist in our land, except for their more developed ability of speech!

[2] We all were quite astonished when You came forward with explanations about these brains, which are even more familiar to us than our dwellings at home. We are of course not knowledgeable about the whole organic construction of our body, but our brain we know from point to point. With us there are still many little empty boards, since we have nothing to fill them all; but the ones which have been drawn, are just like the ones of the right brain and are entirely in Your order as You sufficiently and clearly have explained. However, I truly still want to know, how these people cannot see this in themselves, what to us black skin people forever is clearly visible! What have they done? Who has laid the foundation to such downfall? Someone must have at one stage laid a bad foundation; but who, why and at what opportunity?”

[3] I said: “Who the actual originator is, you should not ask about! Since some things are hidden in the council of God, what the people on this earth do not need to know to the bottom! If man only knows and recognizes what above all is necessary for him to do according to My order! If he does this, for what he has the guiding laws, given from the heavens, everything will be in the best order with him; everything else, however, every person who loves God above all and his neighbor like himself,

and thereby is reborn in the spirit, will get to know entirely.

[4] The only concern now is, whether the white brothers have understood all this quite well, and that the person, who feels a gap in himself, asks what is still foreign to him, and it will then be as brightly as possible explained to him. This is what above all is now necessary! This, however, what you have asked about, will be made known to everybody in due time, once he reaches the rebirth of the spirit.”

[5] With that Oubratouvisar is quite content and converses thereafter with his companions in his own language.

[6] For once Mathael comes forward and says: “Lord, You our live, You our love, since You have allowed to ask, I ask in the name of my father-in-law, my dear wife and in the name of my four companions, that You give us a proper light about a small dark point in this matter! This is a kind of legal question, and I believe that towards You every person, when he has come to use his reason, is entitled to ask in all modesty. Man is originally not his own, but only Your work, what all heavens forever cannot deny!

[7] It seems to me that especially regarding the guidance of the spirits or actually very spoiled souls in the beyond, that with Your love- and almighty means the road to recovery is a little too long winding and harsh! It is true, that in this regard You have showed and explained to us already many things to clearly justify Your once from eternity set up and fixed divine order; however, above all, this true legal question still forces to come up:

[8] Can the apple help it, if the storm tears it off the branch, or can a splintered tree help it, that he became the target of a destructive lightening, or can the calm sea help it, that it is whipped up by the fury of a hurricane to mountain high waves?! What can the rattlesnake help it that its bite is deadly?! And the belladonna has not given the poison to herself! Everywhere one wedge is driving the next, and in the end no one can help it to be driven!

[9] A large piece becoming loose is falling down from a high

rock face and creates a devastation among a coincidentally grazing herd of sheep at the foot of the wall. Who is the guilty party to pay for the damage? If I have tripped over a stone at night and finally fell, who is guilty in this case – the night, the rock, or my eyeless foot? In short there exist a great many of the most difficult questions, where in all cases a mutual violation of the individual primordial natural right becomes tangible visible! In principle, from where does it originates?

[10] Something similar I noticed with people. These blacks are still in possession of the primordial human properties, we whites did not have the slightest idea about it until this day! Yes, why not? It says: because of our spoiled souls, and the soul in turn had to be spoiled, because the brain of man was already spoiled in the mother's womb and later on by a still totally wrong upbringing! And I clearly have to support the question of Oubratouvisar and also say: Yes, yes, mankind is evil and spoiled down to the bottom; but who spoiled them originally, and who allowed them to become spoiled? According to such spoil people can only want something which is completely wrong and therefore can never become better, but only get worse and more wretched!"

74. SO-CALLED INJUSTICES IN THE GUIDANCE OF A SOUL IN THIS WORLD AND IN THE BEYOND

[1] (Mathael:) "Now, in this world for some it is more or less still alright! He creates for himself a little paradise as good as he is able to. Of course, thousands of others must therefore suffer even more, and the reason for it is, that they were not that knowledgeable to create a little paradise for themselves than the smart one! They therefore are getting destroyed in their souls because of envy and rage and the owner of the little paradise because of lust and luxuriance! The first are damned because of need and misery – and the rich because of his abundant life!

[2] However, let's leave the relations on this earth as they are, since they are the fruit of the now thoroughly explained

corrupted souls, and let's turn to the most gruesome results in the great beyond! One's hair are rising when only thinking about it seriously, in which exceedingly terrible and wretched state such a so or so corrupted soul ends up! What curse can for such a description lend the human mouth the proper colored words? Only the greatest tortures of the fire of rage in the soul can along the way of a nameless evil humiliation bring the soul to a little more tolerable condition, wherefore always somewhat of an eternity, according to periods of time, are required! How many souls will therefore from now on in myriads of earth years end up in the deepest and ghastliest misery, to only after again of myriads of earth years become one hair more of freedom and thus reach a more tolerable state!

[3] Lord, I set it up exactly according to Your words and do not add anything, nor omit anything! If I now on the one hand consider Your omnipotence, goodness and love and on the other hand certain in principle blameless corruption of every wretched soul and the nearly forever continuing consequences of the most hair rising kind and finally after the most indescribable tortures a heaven of bliss, which is nearly no degree better than a well arranged slave state on this dear mother earth – I must openly admit to You, despite all the mercies, which You, o Lord has given me, that I find this with my reason extremely strange and as a person, equipped with a feeling heart, I detect an injustice therein, against which all the greatest and most appalling injustices committed by man are absolutely nothing. And with all respect I say thank you but no thanks for such being, irrespective where it finally will end!

[4] And it is quite right as You, o Lord, has shown, how every person, to be able to exist in front of Your naked Godhead, must conduct himself being-like, for what You can only provide him with the opportunity but nothing else. In short, we acknowledge all this, and it requires no further word of explanation. But that souls of people, which have been incarnated in the same manner for already more than a thousand years and then educated in the same manner, as it is unfortunately the case right now, have to

suffer in the beyond for nearly forever, to only become marginally better, appears to me in all cases very harsh! You Yourself taught us to proceed mildly, softly and leniently with ill souls! However, if an ill soul is not cured here on this earth, and enters as still through and through ill the large beyond, no spark of any love and gentleness can be shown to her, I'm of the opinion that also here mercy and love should be expressed rather than the too strict order and justice!

[5] With pleasure I'm admitting, that a perfect life of the soul, unified with the spirit out of God, is the highest treasure; however, experience also shows, that a treasure loses its value, if one has to look for it with too great difficulties.

[6] Someone wants to take a wife for himself. He already knows the one chosen by his heart. But when asking for her hand, conditions are put to him, which he only can fulfill completely in a thousand years, and the difficulties linked to it are nearly of an invincible nature! Yes, is it of any great surprise if such a person finally does not carry any further desire in his heart to own such a chosen wife and has married a maiden of a much lesser background instead, for which much more tolerable and easier achievable conditions were put?

[7] Therein, o Lord, consists my hopefully quite well based reservation and perhaps a weakness of my heart! I therefore ask You, since You Yourself have asked us to ask about anything not understood! If it would please You, You could enlighten me with Your mercy therein?"

75. THE NECESSITY OF EARTHLY TRIALS

[1] I said: “Yes, yes, this is the very knot, which I after the explanation of the brain have discovered not only in you but in several of you, and therefore have asked you to ask.

[2] It goes without saying, that God, as the highest and purest love from eternity always unchanged, can never be in any way loveless, and that He will apply in the most enlivened manner all services and means available to Him, to cure any no matter how ill soul. However, He cannot take away the soul’s own characteristic self, but must leave it untouched and place the soul in such conditions, which she, if everything else is to no avail, can better her through a kind of humiliation!

[3] In the extreme case this road of course can become extremely cumbersome; however, nobody is guilty about this than the soul herself, who has become too obstinate and stubborn, and who of course became like that, because of her imperfectness of which I have told and explained to you before.

[4] But this is the full-strong, very own will of the soul; she wants it like this and always does, what she thinks is best! Now, in this case an omnipotent and most powerful counteraction is of no use; because this would cause the soul the most unheard of tortures – for already the softest influence causes her the most inexpressible pain; just think what she has to endure with a too strong influence?!

[5] God in Himself is the highest fire of all fires and the strongest light of all light! But who can endure a fire if he himself is not fire and endure the highest light if he himself is not light?! There, look at the left brain which is still here! Do you see any fire therein or any light, shining only as bright as a little glow-worm in the night? What does it take until this brain becomes completely fire and the brightest light?

[6] However, if I wanted with all force to begin to exert My influence here, you will not see these two left brain heaps anymore; since they immediately will be dissolved into the familiar little fire tongues and scatter, until My will grasps them

and forms a new being from them. But what happens then to this current being?!

[7] However, so that no being which existed once, can forever not be destroyed in its soul-like sphere and transforms into another being and thereby losing its primordial I, My forever unalterable fixed set up order is good! And even if a soul takes an unimaginable long time to reach its perfection, she still stays her very own primordial I, and will recognize herself unalterable as such forever, which is hopefully still more comforting, than for a soul as completely divided transforms into another individual, where necessarily all recollections of an earlier being had to cease and no trace of an earlier, concrete being would be left! What would then be the meaning of a freely self-determining pre-life? Would a human then be any better off than a creeping worm in the dust?!

[8] The pre-life is mainly blessed with all kind of difficulties. A person, even if he is a son of a king, must endure from his birth until his grave some quite heavy trials. He often makes thousand plans, which he all wants to execute most successfully; but soon unforeseen obstacles arise, and from all the nice plans nothing comes about. In its place all kinds of drudgeries, illnesses, annoyances – in short, for every encouraging day, normally five days in which nothing particularly cheerful occurs, are following, and in every one year a person surely have thirty completely bad days!”

76. THE HUMAN BEING DETERMINES HIS DESTINY HIMSELF

[1] (The Lord:) “If one carefully looks at the life of man even under the most favorable conditions, one easily recognizes that nothing is given for granted. From the king to the beggar, each one has to fight the battle with the summer flies of life, which are full of stings, and which does not contain a lot to look forward to. During childhood man is plagued by weakness, as a man with all kinds of troubles and as an old man with both, and the last hour of life nobody has viewed as the best time of his life.

[2] As such the earthly life creeps along mostly between thorns and thistles, and who doesn't like it, will at the end of the earthly flesh life not be able to talk a lot about pleasant and beatific things; and the more self-loving someone was, the more insults he had to deal with. Who, however, as in the least self-loving, does not make much of all the occurring summer-sting-flies of life and also of all the denigrating and offending thorns and thistles, and to whom also all kinds of bodily suffering, poverty, often hunger and thirst, cold, bad clothes and also a bad dwelling and alongside this still all kinds of other misery, have not made him unsteady, will still be able to talk at the end of his life about some good times, while even a king despite all the incense strewn for him, will at the end of his earthly life career complain about nothing else than all kind of discontents over discontents.

[3] Since where does the king lives, who conducted everything successfully, what he intended to do at the beginning of his reign?! Since this was impossible and he finally had to discover some rough calculation errors at himself, he is totally unhappy, and it is an old, familiar fact, that kings mostly die as a result of a secret inner disappointment.

[4] As such the self-determining and educating person stays throughout the time of his earthly life in his completely determined consciousness of himself, in and under which he

completed this earth's life trial. If in or outside My order, we want to regard in this case as all the same; since in every respect the earthly life had little pleasantries for him, but instead all kind of bitterness to show for. Therefore also the great world-wise of the heathens, did not wanted to praise anyone on this world as fortunate, and praised only those as fortunate, who returned to the lap of the earth.

[5] What would then the reward be for a soul for all the endured troubles, if she, after leaving her body, would lose her consciousness as the indestructible primordial I, and either ceases to be or became divided into thousand other I's?! Would anyone of you be content with such an arrangement of My order? Surely no one! Therefore it is My opinion, that it will still be better, to keep the old order and above all see to it, that any nevertheless how bad soul, does forever not suffer any harm to her identity!

[6] That an I can and must only then become perfectly happy, when it, determining itself, has entered My order, that you know by now perfectly well; since therefore I have preached to you for seven days uninterruptedly and have guided you back to the primordial root of all creation of the spiritual and physical world. However, that to the contrary a soul cannot enter permanent blessedness for as long she is not, determining herself freely, returns to My order, I have shown to you manifold through words, deeds and many examples and again explained them by words. How can thus any coldness, mercilessness, hardness and injustice be in Me? Or can you, what is necessary for a person to be, call hardness in Me? Yes, with one grain less patience and equally less lenience, I would be hard and unjust; but not at all like I am now!"

77. THE INDEPENDENT DEVELOPMENT OF A HUMAN SOUL

[1] (The Lord:) “However, that you, Mathael, say, that finally I’m guilty, that over the length of time people have gone over to a totally evil life wrongness, where they apparently will perish, I immediately set this up against you and say: souls, like those of these blacks, have until now not been called to become children of God, and as such, what they have to present, a more stereotype firmly maintained perfection of their soul is sufficient; since it should not be seen as a special consequence of their most excellent development of their souls, but rather that it is given to them like their black skin. However, if they also want to become children of God, then all this will not be given to them anymore, but only the teaching.

[2] If they according to it will determine themselves and try to strive for the perfection of their souls out of their own strength, and thereby in themselves awaken My spirit of love, they will be of course be similar like you now; but as long their soul perfection is two thirds given to them and only one third is self-acquired, they can never with such soul perfection awaken the spirit in themselves and also stay in the beyond this, what they are here: quite good, but more mechanically blessed, perfect souls, with whom the borders of bliss must necessarily have been fixed, and can never be thought differently.

[3] Where the one and preceding is given, the therefrom following and subsequent can surely not be freely self-acquired; since who has given to you the head, surely also has given you hands, body and the feet! Or do you think that these have arisen from the head by themselves?

[4] Ah, it is something completely different when it comes to a itself determining soul who developed itself to the received word of God! What she has, is her very own property, and she can build for herself therefrom a thousand heavens and more; since she now has her own material and her own matter and by the in her awakened spirit of love also the perfect God-

resembling power, to accomplish such and to be as perfect in everything, as also the Father in heaven is perfect! – And now let's continue!

[5] With a soul, like these blacks confidently own it, can be dealt with soon and easily in the beyond; since what she has, she has, and it stays with her. For herself she forever does not have a higher need and is perfectly happy, similar like a bee, when it has found a rich, with honey filled flower chalice; however, beyond the honey it forever feels no need. Once the bee has, what it was searching for, it already has everything; all the other treasures of the whole of infinity have no meaning for it.

[6] However, it is completely different with a self-perfecting soul! In order to achieve this, all the necessary means had to be made in totality available to her, through which, if she wants to use them, necessarily and infallibly must reach perfection; but the required means are surely never enforced upon the soul, who is called to become voluntarily a child of God, but is only made available to her, just like the materials which are necessary to build a house are made available to the builder master. From there on the builder master uses them according to his own thinking and builds a house from it according to his insight and according to his taste, and the build house is then completely his own work and not a work of him, who supplied the material to him. However, if you have ordered the best materials to build for yourself a dwelling, but you do not build it yourself, but calls upon a builder master to build the required house for you, can you then also say: 'See, this now beautiful and best furnished house is my work!?' Surely not; since the house always stays the work of him, who build it according to his thinking and recognition!

[7] And see, in the same way the perfect souls of the blacks are not their own work! They of course are build quite well, but the blacks have contributed only very little to it. However, if so and not otherwise, they for the time being cannot reach the childhood of God; if however, it would be given to some of them to achieve this, their souls would immediately begin to

look more imperfect. But since a soul, who is called to become a child of God, is only given the material to build herself and alongside the teaching, how to build, it is surely sufficiently explained, that also in the beyond nothing more can be done for her, if she should retain her individuality. Even if a soul is still so corrupted, she never can be touched by My omnipotence, and only the material can be supplied to her in such measure, as she is able to use it; one also cannot burden her with more, than she can carry with her strength.”

78. WHY THE FREE SOUL OF A HUMAN BEING HAS TO REACH HIS PERFECTION HIMSELF

[1] (The Lord:) “Normally a severely corrupted soul is always very weak, so that she is not even able to keep her human form erect and therefore appears in the beyond normally in a half-, sometimes also in a complete animal-like grotesque shape. Now, in time she will be given more and more strength, without her noticing; but then the greatest care is taken, that the soul under no circumstances is not disturbed in her individuality. Simultaneously such support causes the soul a lot of pain, since such a weak soul is extremely sensitive and touchy.

[2] If I suddenly wanted to provide her with too much strength, such heavenly generosity will drive the soul to desperation by the most horrible pain, whereby she finally would become more closed up than a diamond and she could not be taught anything, before getting completely dissolved, whereby I would give her such a push, for which not easily a self-provided counterweight coming from the soul, could be set up. The self conscious I would thereby be lost for at least one eon of earth years and from that point on it had to begin to collect and recognize itself again, what for the soul in her free, bodiless state would be much more difficult to achieve than here, where she has the body as a suitable tool to do this.

[3] For you, My dear Mathael, the extraordinary length of time has caused you too much strain; however, if you could

recognize what it takes, to bring a soul to a point where she to such an extend is free, that she becomes what she is already in you, you would not have taken an exception to the length of time! What do you think how long has it taken, until you, as a quite perfected soul person, has reached this your current degree of life? If I would calculate all this for you, you would be gripped by horror, and you would not nearly understand such! However, our Raphael knows it quite well and understands it in the right depth of depths.

[4] However, this I can tell you, that nobody's soul here is younger than the whole visible world's creation! You feel now uncomfortable about it, if I tell you faithfully to the truth, that your souls are much more than eon times eons of earth years old; should I Myself therefore start to feel uncomfortable, because I exist since eternity and under Me and out of Me already eons of pre-creations have come into being just because to you over unimaginable long periods of time?!

[5] Yes, My friend, to create a son, an earth and all the things on it, is an easy matter! This requires not such a long time. Also to create animal- and plant souls under judgment is not difficult. But to create a soul, completely resembling Me in everything, is also for the almighty Creator a quite difficult matter, since there My omnipotence is of no use, but only wisdom and the greatest patience and leniency!

[6] Since, when it comes to bring forth a soul completely resembling Myself, thus a second Godhead, My omnipotence is only allowed to do very little, however, the newly growing God out of Me must do and provide for everything. From Me he only receives the material spiritually and according to need also physically. And if this would not be the case, and if it could be otherwise, I surely would not, as the most everlasting primordial Spirit, out of love burden Myself with the unpleasant task, to take on the flesh Myself, to guide further the souls who have developed to a certain point, not by My omnipotence, but by My love and to give them a new teaching and the new God-spirit out of Me, so that they now, if they seriously want to, can

become within the shortest time frame, completely one with Me. [7] I say to you: for My everlasting preliminary work, the harvest only starts now, and you will become My first completely perfect children, which however, still lies within your will and not Mine. And I'm now of the opinion, that you, Mathael, will excuse Me with yourself, since you hopefully will recognize all this, what you earlier have not recognized! Is everything clear to you now?"

79. ABOUT POSSESSION. THE SLOW SPREADING OF THE GOSPEL.

[1] Says Mathael: "Yes, Lord, this is completely clear to me now; but I also was together with my four companions very bad, I was a devil, nevertheless Your almighty will has cured me quickly, and because of this, I did not have lost my memory about my previous life! How did this happened? Your omnipotence has helped us instantly!"

[2] I said: "Yes, My friend, this was a completely different case; there not your souls, but only your bodies were corrupted, so that in its intestines a lot of evil spirits had nested! They seized the physical organism to such an extent, that they could rule therein as they pleased, and your souls retreated in the mean time, since they were no match against the great number of spirits, and had to allow the spirits to rule the body, as they wanted.

[3] Thereby your souls did not suffered the slightest damage; since such possessions are only allowed there, where a body is inhabited by a soul which already has developed to such a degree, that the evil, still very unripe soul-spirits from the beyond, cannot harm her.

[4] There My most gentle expression of power is sufficient, to expel thousand times thousand such souls out of the body, of which another example to follow later today will convince you. Once the spirits are out of the body, you will of course feel a significant weakness in the body, which prevails for as long,

until the soul has taken complete control over the entire body's organism again. If this act is completed, the body is then ruled again by the old, completely healthy soul; in that case only the body is helped by My omnipotence, but not the soul. However, where a soul is corrupted by her own will, My omnipotence cannot help, but only love, teachings and patience, since each soul must start building by itself and must perfect herself with the material supplied to her. – Do you understand this now? If there is still anything unclear to you, just keep on asking; since now is the time of complete clarification about everything, and you require a lot of light, to properly illuminate all the others in their dark chambers of life!”

[5] Says Mathael: “Lord, the only wisest and most loving from eternity! I am now in the clearest light and believe that there is only little darkness left in the life chambers of my soul; but where some of the others are standing, You, o Lord, will be of course the only one to know! There will exist some little dark chambers with my father-in-law and with my wife; but with Your mercy and help I will faithfully fill in what is missing!”

[6] I said: “Do just that; since your father-in-law and your wife were until now still heathens, but heathens of the best kind, of which I can say: There one is dearer to Me than a thousand descendants of Israel in Jerusalem and also in the other twelve cities of the whole promised land! Since all those do not want to hear nor to know anything about a close God; they prefer a somewhere infinitely far away God, since in their coarse stupidity they think, that a somewhere endless far standing God can be easier deceived than a God nearby!

[7] O the coarsest misconception among the Jews in this world! However, what else can one do, than with all patience and even with the sacrifice of one's own flesh life, if it would become necessary, to guide the people by teachings and corresponding deeds back to the primordial light of all being and life?!

[8] And this is now My self applied task for you, and yours to your fellowmen will follow! Of course you should not give in to the hope that all this will already take place within the next few

years! I say to you: Within a thousand years and above, more than half the population of this earth will not have heard one syllable of this My Word!

[9] But it does not do too much harm to the matter; since also in the beyond this gospel is preached to the spirits of all the regions of the world. However, still be full of zeal here; since the right childhood of God for My most inner and purest heaven of love, can only be achieved here! For the first and also second heaven can still be taken care of in the beyond.”

80. PERFORMING MIRACLES AT THE RIGHT MOMENT

[1] (The Lord;) “You, Mathael, are now fully in the clear, this means as far a human soul can be in the clear, for as long she has not become completely one with her spirit; therefore let your light also shine in front of all your brothers! But also awaken your faith to the power of My name; since only in My name will you be able in case of need to perform signs for the people for the first awakening of their faith in Me!

[2] Since who preaches My word to the people, but cannot effectuate anything by the power of it, is still a weak servant of Him, who has send him, to bring to the nations of the earth the new word of all life from heaven.

[3] However, by that I do not want to say that a real apostle of My teaching should always produce himself in front of the people, to thereby open up My teaching with the nations of the earth. No, far from that; since the truth must speak for itself, and wherever it is not understood, a closer explanation should follow, and this for as long, until the truth is understood by itself! But still, during the explanation cases arise, where the explanation, especially with still very raw and uncivilized nation, is not sufficient; it is then very necessary, to put the explanation in a more brighter light by a moderate sign.

[4] However, an effectuated or still to be effectuating sign should never be of a too garish and striking kind, by which the people are becoming too afraid and fearful and thereby could

fall into a forcing judgment; since thereby very little or nothing would be gained for the free development of the soul.

[5] A sign must always be of such a nature, that it firstly consists in charity of a kind as if this is the result of the faith of him to whom this extraordinary charitable deed was served; and secondly the sign must never be so far removed from normality, that also a so called world wise could not find a way to explain this in natural terms! With the so called world informed, the sign must make them thinking, but never force them into faith; since they have sufficient conceptual ability, to recognize the truth as such, even without a sign.

[6] In these times of magicians and wizards, however, the signs can be applied quite strongly and tangible; since wherever a sign is performed, the people already have seen hundreds of magic performances by Persian and Egyptian magicians, and therefore a sign effectuated by us does not leave a special impression with the world-wise. In addition we are also surrounded on all sides by the Essences, who with great ease perform all kinds of signs in front of the blind people, to win them over to their side completely in time. And as such our more powerful and more miraculous signs make the people at least thinking, even if they cannot convince them completely, and this exactly the right measure, and it would be no benefit to the people, if we made an even bigger scene with signs.

[7] If I heal all the sick, yes, even awaken the dead, it does not make too much of an impression in front of the people in relation to the Essenes, but it causes the temple clerics the greatest annoyance, who already has cursed the Essene Order, sitting right on their noses, to all devils. Since this order has also spread to Judea, the miracle cures of the Pharisees are not profitable anymore, and all this is the result of the Essenes clever awakening of the dead, to us a very well known secret, which, however, is totally unknown to the Pharisees.

[8] It is, however, also a proper joke, that especially I am the water on the waterwheel of the Essenes, and you still will experience it, that people will say to you, that also I am a

disciple coming forth from this Order and now working to promote this Order, who themselves are now of the opinion, that in a moral sense they soon will control the whole world. This Order is therefore for the time being not against us, and serves us, even without wanting to serve us; since they devaluating our signs in front of the people the most, and it leaves the people's thoughts and their judgments plenty of space. Otherwise we could not perform such powerful signs!

[9] But all this I have foreseen for this time and have let all this happen and to come to be, so that we alongside very easily and in everything unhindered can work as much as possible for the true, free salvation of the people, without forcing anybody to accept the truth by our actions. For the present time our quite strongly applied signs does not cause any particular spectacle for the superficial viewer. Only who is somewhat more serious about us, will of course find an unspeakable large difference between the signs effectuated by Me and those performed by the magicians and Essenes. However, to him this recognition will not cause his soul any harm, because he had to recognize the truth already earlier, before he was able to make a true difference between My signs and the signs of the Essenes. He therefore is already pure, and for the pure everything is pure.”

81. SIGNS FOR THE SPREADING OF THE TEACHING OF THE LORD

[1] (The Lord:) “I also could effectuate signs for Jerusalem, so that the whole of Jerusalem would be overrun to such an extent that they would not think for two moments long to really forge themselves in the believe to Me; but what faith would that be? This would be a slave believe out of fear and awe and would be a judgment to the people, in which they could not find themselves anymore in several thousands of years!

[2] Since a blind, fanatic believe, if based on truth or a lie, does not have any inner value for life, and is subsequently difficult to remove from any nation caught by it. And as long a nations

lives in a fanatic faith, it stands spiritually in judgment and thereby in the deepest soul slavery, and it cannot be helped, not here nor in the beyond, except by a long winding education through words and deeds and by a most thoroughly and at the same time most understandable explanation of all wondrous things, which actually kept the nation's soul captive.

[3] The best means, however, is the establishment of bad, false and lying priests, who, with every God's teaching have sprung from the earth like mushrooms and who later forced themselves onto the people as substitutes of the divine – first of course as wise and gentle admonishers, teachers, comforters and supporters, and later, when they really became the favorites of the people, but then already as judges, punishers and rulers even above the thrones of kings!

[4] Now, it then happens quite often, that the people find out about their evil doings, and the old, spoiled, fanatic believe begins to decay and gets increasingly greater tears and holes; and irrespective how much zealous repair is carried out, it is to no avail, and soon there are only a few left, who at the next best opportunity would exchange the torn, narrow dress for a new one. But until a nation has been brought to that point, it requires at least a few thousand years!

[5] Therefore be extremely careful when spreading My teaching, to make sure that you do not enforce it onto anybody, nor by the sword and even less so by extraordinary signs! The wound of the sword can be healed, however, the wound of a too garish miraculous sign, nearly never.

[6] Wherever the word is sufficient, do not effectuate any signs; since until now they have always been the means of the false prophet, by which they always have made the blind nations even more blind, as they were before. By that I of course do not want to say, that even in an emergency you should not effectuate any signs! You will come to all kind of heathens, whose priests quite well understand how to perform miracles and make all kinds of prophecies, which are always fulfilled by either a finely put, ambiguous dictation, or by widely branched, pre-arranged

means, of which all of it is an inspiration by Satan and his angels, and expresses itself in the evil will and want of the people.

[7] Towards such arch-false prophets it is the right place, to either effectuate a powerful countersign, or to explain to the better part of the population the false miracles of its priests as thoroughly as possible; thereby at least the better part of the nation begins to become strongly suspicious about its priests, and you have virtually won the game.

[8] Only then you also can effectuate an always charitable sign, by healing all kinds of ill people by laying on of hands in My name, and here and there satisfying the hungry and thirsty, also here and there preventing a disastrous storm by only calling on My name against the evil-charged clouds in the air, which at such opportunities are filled with the dirtiest and worst kind of spirits. Thereby you will not imprison anybody's soul like with chains, but lead them completely freely, like a good shepherd leads his lambs, who are pleased to follow him each step of the way voluntarily, since they only expect many good things from him.

[9] Now you know, My dear Mathael, how you fully according to My will have to proceed with the spreading of My teaching by word and deeds with the nations over which you will rule in future, and likewise also your four companions!"

82. DIFFICULTIES FOR SPREADING THE PURE TEACHING

[1] (The Lord:) "You will especially in the northern parts of your kingdom, which at one stage will become the greatest on this earth, meet with extremely dark heathens, with whom it will be very difficult to bring the light of truth to them; but do not treat them with the power given to you with too much force! You can, where it is necessary, approach them with the right seriousness, but certainly not with the sword or with too obvious signs; the sword would only externally take away from them the

old, deeply rooted superstition, but would confirm it internally even more bitterly. And with too garish signs you would only achieve the exchange of one fanaticism with another! Since those nations, who would see your signs, would soon become the greatest enemies of their still none-believing neighbors and pursue them with fire and sword, and the old-believers would do the same to the new-believers. What would be achieved by that?

[2] However, since My teaching is a true message of peace from heaven, it should not bring discord, animosity and war to the people and nations of this earth! This should be avoided as much as possible. To avoid this by Me, I only had to bring you firmly under the power of My omnipotent will, upon which you of course would be unable to act and think differently as determined by My measured will; however, what would then become of your own free will?! And if I wanted this, it would never be necessary for Me to enter the flesh of this world; since My eternal omnipotence could have seized you without this flesh and could force you, to speak and act this and that, just like it was possible to have driven the prophets at one stage. However, would that be of any use to you? You would thereby have become perfect nature-souls like these blacks here, but not likely perfect children of God.

[3] Therefore, however, that you yourself could become perfectly free preachers of My word for all times of times, I came in the flesh to you on this earth, where I have founded the plant-school for My children for the whole of infinity, so that you as My free children can also freely learn from My mouth the teaching, to assess it and also to spread it further among the nations of the earth; and who will accept it freely in its purity, will also thereby freely earn the claim to the most blessed childhood of God.

[4] However, who took on this teaching not voluntarily, but where it was forced upon him by whatever means, will not have a claim to the childhood of God for as long he will not out of his very own initiative, either here or also in the beyond, will start to worry about My pure word and voluntary make it his

life's guideline.

[5] I unfortunately can see it, who sad things in general will turn out with also this My teaching within a few years, after I have returned home. But I also can see how it will be maintained sun pure in small societies until the end of all times of this earth! And this is a great refreshment of My most true father heart. However, what happens in general should not bother you at all; since from the many pigs you will never raise philosophers. For those creatures soon any food is good enough. Although I call: 'Come to Me, all of you who are laborious and suffering, since I will refresh you all!'; but this My life call will remain unheard and not obeyed by many!"

83. THE SWORD AS A MEANS OF CHASTISEMENT FOR UNBELIEVING NATIONS

[1] (The Lord:) "There will be times when the wise will say about My word: 'Lord, now it is truly difficult to be human; by threatened punishment one is not allowed to speak the truth, but only very secretly! However, this is what the false prophets want, is an obvious lie and therefore blasphemy! Lord, arm Yourself for once and move towards Your enemies, before they completely destroying Your field of life!'

[2] However, I will keep waiting and waiting and say to everyone who will in this way call upon Me: 'Be patient for still a short while, until the given measure is full! Wait until the end and you will become blessed; since the compulsion of the world will cause you pure no harm to your souls, and you as My youngest children, who under all kind of hardship, need and misery have gone through the way of the flesh, will rest even closer to My heart in My kingdom, and I will make you the judges of the world and those, who have tormented you with need and hardship of all kinds without reason and right by Me!'

[3] In short, My true disciples will always be recognizable thereby, that they will love each other, like I'm loving you all, and that they never preach My name and My word with

the sword!

[4] Yes, once a nation is standing completely in My light, and it would be threatened by stubborn, blind, outer heathen nations, who do not at all want to accept the faith in Me, but pursue with zeal and fury My lambs, then it is time to take up the sword and to scare away the wolves from the devout herds for good. However, once the sword is taken up in My name against the wolves, it then should be taken up with all seriousness, so that the wolves remember the sword which has seized them in My name. Since where the judgment in My name has risen, it should not have the appearance of only a half seriousness!

[5] Against blind heathens, whose souls are still too far away from My order and impossibly can understand My word, but otherwise follow their faith with a special zeal, the sword should only be set up as a guardian for the boundaries for as long the neighborly heathens begin to comply to My order; if this has taken place, brotherly unity and love should replace the sword.

[6] However, it is something completely different, if in future people, who from the very beginning were called the 'the people of God' and were taught and protected as such, -ah, if they persistently oppose this My teaching and will pursue it with the most evil and most selfish zeal, yes, against them there will be no other means than the most sharpest and severest sword! Woe them, if it is unleashed; then no stone will be left on top of each other, and the children in the mother's womb will not be spared! And who wants to flee, the bow's arrows will catch up with him and kill him, because out of selfishness and against his inner conviction, he wanted to become a murderer of My word and Me; since those against whom I will go to battle with the mine, will have to bear a tough fight, from which they never ever can emerge as victors!

[7] Now you also have the rule, how and when you in My name can use the sword! Have you understood all this quite well and correct?"

[8] Says Mathael: "Lord, You my only love, upon everything what was said and explained by You most mercifully, I do not

find anything dark inside me anymore, and I now say from the deepest bottom of my heart the most life warmest thanks for it and would also like to thank You in advanced on behalf all those people and nations, which I, by my zeal, will win over for Your word and for Your kingdom!”

[9] Says Cyrenius: “Lord, the very same thanks also I bring to You and dare to make before You, o Lord, only a weak prophet by what You just have explained about the use of the sword, regarding the well-known people of God: they are very strongly represented in Jerusalem! Over this nation I already now want to hit an inhumane large cross; since they seem to be over ripe for the sharpest sword!”

[10] I said: “Not yet; they still short three masterpieces of the most inhumane evilness! Once they have also executed those despite all teachings and warnings, only then, friend, over this city and all its inhabitants your inhumane large cross will be hit with the sharpest sword! We want to be patient with those people for another forty-four years and a little above and will warn them before their downfall for another seven years by all kinds of messengers, by appearances of the dead and by many and large signs on the firmament! And, friend, should also all this be in vain, only then will your most inhumane sign in the largest and with the sharpest sword being hit above them! I wish it could be avoided!

[11] However, what still will be happening, only the Father knows, but no other being in the whole of infinity! To whom He will reveal it at the right time, will also know it!”

[12] Said Cyrenius: “But You, o Lord, will know very precisely about it; since in Your spirit You are the Father Himself!”

84. THE FATHER AND THE SON IN JESUS

[1] I said: “You have spoken quite well! The Father is in Me in all fullness; however, I as the outer person, am still only a son of Him and in My soul only knows that, what He reveals to Me! I am the flame of His love, and My soul is the light out of the fire of love of the Father; but you know it, how the light effectuates always and everywhere wondrously!

[2] The sun, from where the light goes forth, has a wondrous inner and most inner construction; but this is only known to the innermost of the son itself. The outer, although the all enlivening light, does not know anything about it and also does nowhere draw a picture, from which one could view the inner and innermost construction of the sun.

[3] Yes, the Father is in Me already since eternity; but His innermost reveals itself only then in My soul, if He Himself wants it. However, I still know everything, what was in the Father since eternity: nevertheless, the Father still has many things in His innermost, what the Son does not know about. And if He wants to know about it, He must ask the Father for it!

[4] However, soon the hour will arrive, when the Father in Me also with His innermost will fully become one with Me, the only Son from eternity, just like also the Father’s spirit in your souls will soon become one with the souls in your bodies; and only then everything will be revealed to you by the Father’s spirit in you, what at present is still impossible to be revealed to you! And as such the Father in Me still knows some things, what the Son does not know! – Do you understand this well?”

[5] Say now some of the disciples: “Oh, is this not again a rock-hard teaching! For that we again have to ask for an explanation! Since when You and the Father are one, how can the Father in You know more than You? And still, according to Your added teachings afterwards, You are the Father Himself?! Oh, this understands who can and wants to, we do not understand this! It is becoming thicker and thicker! Something might be behind it; but to what use? We do not understand this! Lord, we ask You

for it, that You explain this more clearly; since with that we cannot do much!"

[6] I said: "O children, o children! For how long I still have to endure you, until you will understand Me?! I now speak to you as person to person, and you do not understand the person; how do you intend to understand a pure word of God later on?! But to prepare you even better for this, I will explain this a little closer to you, and therefore listen very carefully to Me!

[7] Imagine this our sun's actual body as the Father, in which exists all the conditions, by which the, exceptionally luminous light-shell that is visible to you, is continuously generated. The light-shell around the sun's body is approximately the same as the atmospheric air around this earth, which also surrounds this earth equally to a few thousand man-heights, and seen from the moon, forms together with the earth a considerable strongly illuminated, ostensible large disc.

[8] But how is the air of the earth formed? Out of the innermost life processes of the earth! The earth's innermost is therefore full of air, and only the considerable surplus collects in always the same measure around the earth. However, so that the inner of the earth keeps on producing air, there must be a continuous fire present therein, which is produced by the great activity of the inner spirits.

[9] Imagine it like this: The innermost fire corresponds to this, what I call 'Father', and the air is produced by the elements dissolved by the inner fire, which, however, corresponds to this what we call 'soul'.

[10] The fire could not exist without the air, and the air could not exist without the fire. The fire is therefore also the air, and the air is also the fire: since the flame is truly only air, whose spirits are on the highest level of activity, and the air in itself is also pure fire, but in a state of rest of its consisting spirits. It is therefore easy to see, that basically the fire and the air are one. However, until the air spirits are not excited to a certain degree, the air stays only air, and therefore a large difference exists between the excited fire air, as already fire, and between the still

actually resting air.

[11] In the fire itself is the light and as such, spiritually seen, the purest and highest knowledge and recognition; in the air which is penetrated by the light of the fire, then also exist the full knowledge and recognition, however, in an already lesser degree. If the quieter air is also excited, that itself becomes fire and light, then also in it the highest knowledge and recognition is present.

[12] The earth with such a construction resembles therefore a person. The inner fire is the love spirit of the soul in its activity, and the air is similar to the soul, which absolutely can also be a fire spirit, if completely penetrated by the love of the spirit, which is its activity, and thereby becomes completely one with the spirit! And the soul becomes this by the rebirth of the spirit.

[13] And see, the very same relation you find in the sun. In its innermost is a most intense fire, whose light power inexpressively exceeds the light strength of the outer light atmosphere. Out of this light the purest sun air is produced, and this air becomes on its surface fire and light itself, however in a lesser degree as there is the fire and its most powerful light in the large centre of the sun. However, the outer sunlight atmosphere is therefore with respect to its being very much the same as the fire in the centre of the large sun! It only requires the highest excitement, and it will become exactly the same as the inner fire.

[14] Now, this innermost fire of the sun is like the Father in Me, and I am the light and the fire coming forth from the basic central fire, by which everything that there is, was created, lives and exists. Thus in My present being I'm the outer and effectuating of the innermost Father in Me, and therefore everything of the Father is Mine and also everything what is Mine belongs to the Father, and I and the Father must therefore necessarily perfectly be one, with only one difference, that in the innermost fire always a deeper knowledge and recognition must be present than in the outer light, which is only excited by the inner fire to such a degree, as it is necessary.

[15] I could also co-excite Myself; but then you would loose your existence, just like all the world bodies orbiting around the sun would cease to exist, once the sun's outer light atmosphere would ignite with the power of the innermost sun fire and light, whose power would co-excite all the spirits in the wide space of creation to such an extent, that in a moment it would become an infinite, most powerful sea of fire, primordially sudden dissolving all matter! Now, the inner of the sun's matter is of course constructed in such a way, that it can contain this fire, and the continuously streaming mighty waters as the result of a continuous circulation like with man the circulation of the blood, are providing the fire with continuous activity to dissolve and to form new air and subsequently water, and therefore the fire cannot cause destruction to the actual sun body; and even if there are parts continuously dissolved, they are soon replaced by in-streaming water. And as such everything must remain in a continual order.

[16] If you now want to look at this picture a little closer, it must become at least to some extend clearer to you, what is actually the 'Father' and what is the 'Sun', and what is the soul and what the spirit in it! Tell Me now, if you are still not in the clear!"

85. PHENOMENA AT THE BAPTISM OF THE LORD

[1] Says Simon Juda: "Lord, when You were baptized in front of Me in the river Jordan by Johannes with water, we saw a flame in the form of a dove floating above Your Head, and it was said, that this was the holy spirit of God! And at that stage also a voice in the air was heard: 'See, this is My beloved Son who pleases Me; you should listen to Him!' What was this? From where came this holy flame, and who spoke the clearly heard words? How should we understand this?"

[2] I said: "From where else could this have come than from only Myself?! Or do you think that behind the stars lives a Father in endless space, who let the flame come above My head

and who also spoke the certain words from the same infinite height down to earth? O you so most blind blindness of the people! If the everlasting Father dwells in Me, His equally everlasting Son, in a way I just have sufficiently clear described to you, from where could have come the flame and the voice? Look here, and you will see the same flame above My head! And listen, and you will again hear the same words!”

[3] Then all saw the flame floating in the form of a burning cross or mistakenly somewhat in the form a dove, which basically also represents a cross, and at the same time all heard the already well known words.

[4] But I said: “This was the voice of the Father in Me, and the flame originated from My infinitive outer life-sphere, which is My outwardly effectuating holy spirit! Do you, Simon Juda, understand this now quite well?”

[5] And all said: “Yes, Lord, now also this is clear, although wonderful over wonderful!”

[6] Said Mathael: “Lord, Lord, You Most Wise since eternity, great things which cannot be studied, You have explained to us and have shown Your order, like it is and was since eternity! I can now think back and forth, and see, everything is bright and clear to me, regarding all the unalterable relations between You, the Creator, and us, Your creatures! All your arrangements are so wisely put, that also the sharpest mind and the brightest reason cannot find anything, which in itself and with itself could be standing in the slightest contradiction to each other.

[7] Only when I place myself with my thoughts in the deepest background of all times and all eternities, then I must think that everything created what there is, like all primordial archangels, all heavens, all worlds – like suns, earths, moons, all the stars which according to your explanation are also nothing else than suns, earths and moons, which we mortals of course cannot see with our flesh eyes because of the too great distance, still must have had a beginning, otherwise the possibility of their existence, at least for me, would not be thinkable! Since in certain positive relations I think by myself as follows: A being,

thing or issue, which never began to be, can in fact not exist! Or could a thing become to be from nothing, which You as Creator never have thought about?!

[8] Therefore an existing thing, like for example a primordial central son, must at one stage been thought by You in Your gradual order, before it, of course only then, began to effectuate in its sphere as a concrete primordial son. It could, however, according to my reason, not be there, if You had not thought of only one atom of its being! In short, it could not be there, if it had no beginning of being! It can of course be eons times eons centuries old, even thousand times older, it doesn't matter; if it is undeniable there, it must have had a beginning. If, this is here unimportant and it is something, about which one do not have to worry about!

[9] Now, one could of course apply the sentence also onto You, and therefore Your most solid eternity, without a beginning, would fall into the nicest nothingness! Only, in this case, my clear mind and my bright reason tell me something completely different! Even if I go in my thoughts for eternities to eternities backwards, I cannot think of any end. The infinitive space and together with it the equally endless time periods remain.

[10] In this therefore necessary everlasting, endless space, this primordial everlasting power must have been present, because the endless expansion of space forever depends on it, and without it space is unthinkable just as this power is unthinkable without space. This power can only be one, just as space is only one; it must have in itself some kind of centre and so to speak a point of gravity, like the infinitive space itself. Since space is as such there, the most infinitive and therefore freest being in it, must, by feeling itself, express itself; since how could it be, if it in its highest independence cannot perceive that it exists?!

[11] What, however, is applicable to space, must also be applicable to the power contained in it; also it must feel itself as necessarily present, otherwise it could impossibly be there. In short, these are understood and by themselves conditioned necessities that the one without the other cannot exist! However,

all this is originally and most individually Your spiritual primordial being itself, and therefore can according to Your spirit never ever thought away!

[12] According to my understanding You are therefore just as necessary forever, just as everything else, at least regarding its formal existence, can necessarily only be temporarily! But now comes a complete different question!

[13] Since all these visible and also invisible creations must have had a beginning even if unthinkable long times ago, what did You, o Lord, have done during the eternities before this beginning? I notice from Your friendly smiling face, that I have asked my question somewhat silly; nevertheless I'm quite convinced that it is not without substance! And You, o Lord, will also ignite a little light for us in this respect! My searching soul wants to be completely in the clear.”

86. THE IMMENSITY OF CREATION

[1] I said: “My dear friend Mathael, the unbridgeable difference between God and created limited man, even of the most perfect kind and type, will always exist, and in all eternity it cannot be lifted, that God in His primordial being is and must always be everlasting and infinite in everything, while man will exist forever in future in his continuously more perfect spiritual being, however, he cannot and will not ever reach the infinite primordial being's measure of God.

[2] Man can resemble God in its form, also in love and its power, however, forever not completely in the being-like magnitude of the most infinite wisdom in and out of God; and as such the long eternities in their countless eternal periods can contain a few things, which surely can find some place in the most endless space, of which even a primordial archangel could never have dreamt of! Since also a primordial archangel has for this a too enormously limited perceptive power; only when every primordial archangel has made the way through the flesh like Me, will he be able to understand more. However

everything, impossible forever never in the never ending infinity!

[3] Yes, forever and ever you will learn about new wonders for you and begin to get accustomed to them, but you will never ever reach the end of it, and you can make the reason for this clear to yourself, if you imagine if it is possible to keep on counting until you have reached the end of numbers! But if I, according to the spirit, exist, think, will, act and effectuate since all eternity continuously as one and the same God out of always the same love and wisdom, which in itself by every period of creation and its completed successful work for all future eternities, must of course also feel more perfect and dignified blessedly, and the more wise among you can think for yourself, that I, as the Father now speaks in and out of Me, surely did not until this creation period spend My time in a sort of winter hibernation somewhere at an infinitive point in everlasting space! Even if one period of creation may from its primordial beginning until its total final spiritual completion lasts for thousand times thousands of eons times eons of thousand earth year cycles (according to GGJ05,05: 1 aeon = decillion times decillion earth years, 1 decillion = 1 followed by 60 zeros, thus 1 eon = 10 to the power of 120), such creation period is still nothing compared to My everlasting Being, and it's for you immeasurable seize is according to space nothing in infinite space!

[4] You, Mathael, know the zodiac of the old Egyptians, and Regulus in the Great Lion you know quite well! What is it to your eye? A gleaming little dot, but nevertheless there where it is, it is still such a large sun world body, that a lightening flash, which travels in four moments a distance of 400,000 country lanes (1 country lane about 1/4 hour and a little more walking. 10 country lanes = 1 German Mile. $400,000 \div 10 = 40,000$ miles = speed of light per second. Note by Jakob Lorber: 1 German Mile = 7.5 kilometer, thus 40,000 German miles = 300,000 kilometer; Robert Blum vol.2, chapter 299,08), will, according to you, Mathael, well-known old Arabic grouping of numbers,

take more than one trillion of earth years, to travel the distance from its north pole to its south pole! Its actual name is Urka, better Ouriza (the first or the beginning of creation of eons times eons of suns in a nearly endless wide enwrapped creation-globe (one shell-globe or perhaps one universe, the translator)); it is the soul or the central point of gravity of a creation-globe, which actually forms only a single nerve in the large worlds-creation-man (cosmic man, the translator), which the imagined large-man has of course so many as all the sand and all the grass of the whole earth, where the large-world-man (cosmic man) actually forms only one creation-period from its beginning to its spiritual perfection.

[5] Such an Urka and even more a whole shell-globe are already quite respectable large things, and still unspeakable larger is such a cosmic large-man! But what is he compared to the everlasting, infinite space? As good as nothing! Since everything necessarily limited, even if for your concepts still so endlessly large, is in relation to infinite space as much as nothing, since it cannot ever form any calculable relationship to the infinite space.

[6] Now I ask you, My dear Mathael, if you from what has been said start to comprehend, where it will eventually end!"

[7] Says Mathael: "O Lord, yes, yes I comprehend quite well; but with this comprehension I begin to lose myself and dissolve into nothingness! Since Your everlasting power and size, the infinite space and the everlasting time periods overwhelm me completely. There is some mist in me – but if I correctly has understood what You, o Lord, has so to speak breathed to us, I of course do not really know or don't know at all, that such creation-periods – to count in Arabic manner – You not only have zillions or eons behind You, but countless! Since if I started counting the time periods backwards and started with the present one, I surely would forever never reach a figure where one could say it was Your first!

[8] In short, You have no beginning, and as such also Your creations impossibly could ever had a beginning, and as many

infinite space can contain, among them there still is no one of which one could say: 'See, this was the first! Before it, nothing was created!' Since before such first there still exists another complete eternity! What would You have done during it with Your always same existence? In endless space there are also endless many creations; even if their distances are still so endless large, it doesn't matter! The endless space has space enough for all the everlasting endless many and will still have room for eons times eons many and forever still countless new ones, and those future creations will not really increase those present since eternity; since something endless and countless can therefore never become more, since it is already endless many.

[9] Yes, if I start counting this period with one, it will surely be increased by one, like during the coming eon-times or eternities it will be increased by one and one and one; but where the back figure is already endless, no increase of it is imaginable! The new creations are counting for themselves something, but do not add anything to the pre-creations!

[10] This is how my comprehension sounds intending to destroy me completely! But let go of such thoughts, which, because of their too endless size want to crush and destroy my small soul totally! If I only have an everlasting life, love and mercy added to it and such a region like the one over there, I will never wish again, to even know more about the moon or even our sun! I also realize now, how silly it was of me, to ask You about something, which is completely inappropriate to ask by a limited person! Lord, forgive me My great stupidity!"

87. THE INCARNATION OF THE LORD IN THIS PERIOD OF CREATION AND ON OUR EARTH

[1] I said: “No, My friend, this is not stupidity, but for this earth life a somewhat too far and too deep going presumptuousness; since for as long the soul has not totally become one with My spirit in her, you cannot understand and comprehend such things in their proper depth. If soon you reach the spiritual rebirth and even as a spiritual perfect existence on the other side in the kingdom of God, you will comprehend many things to the deepest reason, but only so far as it concerns this present creation period, in whose order every preceding creation has its existence and as perfected now and forever forth spiritually still has. Nevertheless, there does exist between this and all preceding creation periods, just like between this earth and all the other countless worlds of the primordial cosmic man, a most monumental difference.

[2] With all the forever countless many pre-creations, which all presented and formed a primordial cosmic man, I never have been wrapped into the flesh as a person on any earth by the power of My will before, but corresponded with its human creatures only by the purest angel-spirits who were particularly created for that creation. Only this creation period has the destination, on a small world-earth-body which is this particular earth, to have Me for all the preceding as well as all the following never ending creations to eternity in My everlasting primordial divine existence in the flesh and in the narrowest form in front of them and to be taught by Myself.

[3] For all future times and eternities I wanted to create for Myself true and real children completely resembling Me, however not as usual, but truly bring them up by My fatherly love, so that they can rule with Me the whole of eternity.

[4] However to achieve this, I, the infinite, eternal God, took on the flesh for the main life centre of My divine being, to present Myself to you, My children, as visible and touchable Father and to teach you Myself out of My very own mouth and heart the

true, divine love, wisdom and power, by which you like Myself should and will rule, not only all the beings of this current creation period, but also the preceding ones and all which will follow.

[5] And therefore this creation period has above all others the still by you not sufficiently recognized advantage, that it is in the whole of eternity and infinity the only one, in which I clothed Myself completely in the human flesh, and in the whole, large creation-man I have chosen this shell-globe, and in it the central sun region (galaxy, the translator) of Sirius, orbited by two-hundred million suns where each is orbited by many earth bodies, in particular this earth on which we are standing now, to become Myself a person and to raise you people as My true children for the whole of infinity and eternity backwards and forwards. And if you, Mathael, as one of the best skilled mathematicians considers this properly, eternity and space's infinity will not bother you too much anymore.

[6] For the still so wise, limited and restricted soul these concepts of infinity and eternity are of course somewhat necessarily continuously pressing inconceivable; however not so for the once completely awakened spirit in the soul. Since he is free and resembles Me in every aspect, and his movement is of a kind, that all space-like relations are an absolute zero to him, and this, friends, is already a most important property of the spirit-person!

[7] Imagine the even so quick movement of the bodies, as I have explained this to you sufficiently at an earlier opportunity, and you will soon realize, that the quickest movement of the central suns made known to you, even if their speed is increased eon times or raised to the power of eon times, compared to the speed of the spirit it is still slow as snail's pace, since it still requires time in relation to an exceedingly large distance travelled in space, while for the spirit any still so immeasurable space distance is the same; because for the spirit 'here' and still so immeasurable far away 'there' is the same, while the various space distances for any other movement makes an essential

difference.

[8] Furthermore I draw your attention to the fact, how the spirit of a person, even if not completely one with the soul, nevertheless causes a peculiar feeling to flow into the soul, and thereby makes itself noticeable as pure spiritual, so that facts (occurrences) – and even if taken place an eternity before this present time! – are presented as if taking place right now, or as if the spirit was also at that stage present as an eye and ear witness. The seeming ‘being faraway’ of such facts occurring a long time ago, are only produced by the limited soul itself in her brain. In the soul the recollection takes the place of this spiritual feeling; however this does not bring the fact to the presence, but it places it in time when it happened. The spirit however, goes in presence back to the time when the occurrence took place and also brings any future occurrence to such an extend to the presence, as if it is taking place at this very moment, either as already started or as already completed for a long time.

[9] The world-wise call this pure spiritual feeling of present realization of facts from either a long time ago or of facts still to occur in future as the ‘fantasy’ of people. Only, it is not so, since fantasy can only be called those things, which the soul assembles as something new from the stock of her pictures and thereby produces a form or work which cannot be found anywhere in the free nature-world. From this pure soul-like ability, all tools, buildings and clothes of people and fables and all kind of poetry arose, whose background is either very seldom a full truth, but mostly a sheer lie and is actually nothing.

[10] It is thus this, what one can call fantasy; however, the previously mentioned feeling of present realization of either past or also future facts is a life peculiarity of the spirit, and the pure thinking person can derive therefrom, that the spirit in man has nothing to do with either space or time and is thereby standing ruling above both.

[11] For the spirit therefore space exists only then, if he creates and wants one, and under the very same conditions also time. If

he does not want time, immediately the eternal present of the past, the present and future takes its place.

[12] Finally you could still notice a third pure spiritual property in you, if you really would pay attention to it! This property consists therein, that you are able to suddenly imagine any still so large object in all its parts and with one glance overlook a complete sun-region. The soul with its sensory perceiving ability must in time slowly look at an object from all sides, must touch it and listens to it and must analyze it, to be able to generate for herself in time a complete picture. The spirit however, surrounds a complete central sun from the in- and outside in a nearly unthinkable quickest moment and equally quick also countless of such suns and all its planets; and the more powerful the spirit is by the order of the soul, the more thorough and more precise is the insight and overview of the spirit of the largest and endless complicated things of creation.

[13] ‘Yes’, you say and even rightly so, ‘how is this quickest total overview possible for the spirit?’ And I say and answer you: In a most perfect way, just like it is possible for a perfectly, nature-orderly developed soul to feel at a distance by means of her outer life-sphere, like you had ample of proof with these blacks. However, with the only substantial difference that such property of the soul, even with its still so big intensity, cannot really be compared with a similar property of the spirit, because the soul is necessarily still spatially limited and is only able to think and to feel outside its ground-form under certain transcendent-nature-like primordial elements, and this, the closer to its actual human life-form, the more noticeable and more clearer. For further away even in her most perfected, admittedly only soul-like condition, she succeeds only poorly; and if a soul possess an even so powerful outer life-sphere, and will be transmitting from here, she will not be able to perceive anything in Africa.”

88. THE RADIATING SPHERE OF LIFE OF SOUL AND SPIRIT

[1] (The Lord:) “Ah, when at times of a certain enrapturing for a few moments the spirit with its primordial fire ether emits into the perfect soul, then the distant feeling, distant effectuating and distant viewing is raised to a higher power, and in such moments it is for the soul possible, to reach the even very distant stars and look at them with great precision; but when the spirit in the soul withdraws orderly, the soul with her pure outer life-sphere can only reach effectively, as far as she under the most favorable conditions can find anything to her elementary corresponding. Her outer life-sphere resembles the emission of an earthly visible light. The further away from the flame, the more weakly and faintly it becomes, until finally nothing is left then night and darkness.

[2] However, it is quite different with the outer life-sphere of the spirit. It is equal to the ether, which fills the entire, infinite space as completely evenly distributed. When the spirit freely emerges in the soul and is excited, in the same moment also its outer life-sphere is endlessly far away excited too, and his viewing, feeling and effectuating reaches without the slightest limitation so endless far away, as the ether fills the space between and in the creations through and through; since this ether is – said among us – actually absolutely identical with the eternal life-spirit in the soul. The spirit is only a condensed focal point of the general life-ether, which fills the whole of infinity. And when fully grown through the soul and gets into contact with the outer ether, his feeling, thinking and viewing is immediately unified with the infinite outer life-sphere to an endless distance without weakening, and what the large life-ether in endless space feels, sees, thinks, wills and effectuate by surrounding and penetrating everything, is also felt, viewed, thought, willed and effectuated in the same moment by the separate spirit in a soul, and this also is felt, viewed, thought, willed and effectuated by the soul, for as long she is penetrated

by her spirit and for as long he is connected with the infinite and most general outer life-ether which he is so closely related to.

[3] The difference between the outer life-sphere of a still so perfected soul on its own and the outer life-ether of the spirit is therefore easy understandable endlessly and inexpressively large, and you will now begin to understand, how it is possible for a spirit, to place himself feeling, seeing, thinking, wanting and effectuating in a still so far away distance, yes to penetrate the whole of infinity on its own, because he is in the whole, eternal infinity as completely uninterrupted on all points of the entire, eternal space without weakening one and the same.

[4] If then by the dwelling where soul parts of the general spirit are separately present, they nevertheless henceforth form a perfect oneness with the overall-spirit, as soon as they have penetrated the soul completely as a result of the conditional spiritual rebirth. By that they most certainly do not lose their individuality, because as life-focal-points in the human form of the soul, they also possess the same form and thereby with their soul, which is actually their body, as spirits who immediately can see and feel also necessarily can feel and very clearly observe everything which is particularly individually present in their enclosing souls. For this reason, however, a soul, once completely filled by her spirit, can also see, feel, hear, think and want everything, because she is completely one with her spirit.

[5] If during this quite tangible explanation still no light has come up in you about the being of the spirit and its abilities, I truly Myself would not know, in which manner I could have made this even more clear to you before your rebirth of the spirit in your souls! Therefore all of you speak quite openly, if you now finally have understood Me regarding this most important point!”

89. THE OMNISCIENCE OF GOD

[1] Say Mathael and a few others: “O Lord, good, we are now fully in the clear and nearly would not know what still to ask You! Lord, ask us now a few things; since You will know best, where we are still lacking something!”

[2] I said: “This would be somewhat clumsy, if I had to ask you something, as if I had to learn such from you, since I know and see everything what is going on inside you! Yes, even your most secret thoughts, which you nearly don’t even know yourself, are clearly visible to me like the sun in the sky, and I should ask you something, as if I would not know about it already?! Would this not be clumsy or at least a useless, time wasting mouth- and tongue exercise?!”

[3] Says here the black standing close-by: “Lord, this appears to me as inconsistent; since according to my knowledge a short while ago You Yourself have asked Your white disciples if they have comprehended this or that properly! This is, nevertheless, also a question by which one wants to know from somebody, from whom you have not received the right clarity before! Why do You ask the disciples? Wouldn’t You know whether they have understood Your great and most wise revelations or not?”

[4] I said: “O you my valued black friend! With regard to asking one does not only ask to obtain information which you previously did know yourself, but one quite often asks, and this with a good reason, namely to examine and to guide ones fellowmen to think about something.

[5] A teacher asks his pupils about things which he anyhow knows and must know quite well even without the answer of the little disciples. And the judge asks the sinner against the law, what he is to blame for, not to find out what he did against the law – which the judge is well aware of, but he only wants a confession from the sinner and punishes the mischievous transgressor, if he stubbornly lies about everything, which the judge knows quite well from the concurring evidence of various witnesses!

[6] And therefore also I as a most rightful teacher and as a most righteous judge, can ask you people always questions, not for the purpose to learn something from you which I did not know before, but to urge you to think for yourself and examine yourself! In this way I can ask anyone; however, if I wanted to ask anyone of you, as if I wanted to convince Myself if he or she of My disciples has understood My teaching or not, it would be a futile and clumsy questioning by Me, since as God I could have known this from eternity anyhow who and how well anyone will understand Me in this particular time on this earth! Are you now in the clear about this?"

[7] Says the black: "Yes Lord, and I beg You for forgiveness, that I have bothered You, o Lord, with my most clumsy question! Subsequently I will not do this again, if I will have the privilege, to be allowed to be present in Your holy nearness for some time with my colleagues!"

[8] I said: "You can stay with Me as long as you like and also ask questions! If there is anything what is not clear enough to you, you have, just like anybody else, the free and full right to ask! Since at this place I give Myself completely openly; later there will come a time when I for some time will not listen to any question from nobody. There is still something like gap in you; question yourself and ask, and also in this regard you should receive the light!"

[9] Says the black: "O Lord, it is not necessary to question myself for very long; since my gaps I know just too well for a long time! And see, it is a main gap, that I cannot in the least explain the omniscience of God to myself! How can You know about everything in the whole of infinity?"

[10] I said: "Yes, if you still do not understand this, then you have not sufficiently understood My revelation about the outer life-sphere of the spirit in depth! You will have understood that the eternal space of creation is everlasting and infinite, and how it is filled in all directions forever forth and forth with My spirit, which is pure love, therefore life, light, wisdom, clearest self-conscience, a most certain feeling, noticing, seeing,

listening, thinking, will and effectuating.

[11] In Me is the focal point of this very one and everlasting same spirit, and this focal point, however, is one with its endless large and all infinity filling outer life-sphere, which in Me with the main life-focal-point with everything its contains, is always in the closest connection. But this My outer life sphere penetrates everything in the whole, everlasting infinity and sees, hear, feels, thinks, want and effectuate everywhere in absolutely the same manner.

[12] To a certain distance your soul can do the same, and it would be difficult for anyone to create an evil thought in your presence, without you recognizing this immediately. And just as you can do this by means of your powerful outer life-sphere of your soul, which is continuously very closely connected to it and thereby your clear I expands far beyond yourself, it is the same case with My outer life-ether, with the only difference, that your soul's outer life-sphere is limited to only a certain space, because as substance, and the different foreign elements she encounters, she cannot expand any further.

[13] However, the outer life-ether of the spirit can forever not encounter any foreign elements, since basically everything is he himself; and therefore he can most freely and unhindered endlessly see, feel, hear and understand everything that is. And see, this was then clearly and understandably for you the basis why the omniscience of God is so difficult to understand! Say, are you now in the clear about this?"

90. THE LANGUAGE OF THE ANIMALS

[1] Says the black with a brightening face: “Yes, yes, yes, now I also understand this very well and believe at the same time to understand also other things which I earlier have not comprehended so well! In this way we also understand the language of the animals completely and who wants to go through the trouble to modulate the few noises of the animals according to the inner feeling and the nature soul-like intelligence, which of course requires a little practice, can speak with animals almost like with people and learn from them what in all seriousness is of no little importance. I have tried it already, but never managed to speak a language understandable to all animals, because my organs are not equipped accordingly and still not suitable; but I can understand everything what any animal says to its equal.

[2] As such I have overheard very clearly two ichneumons at home at the Nile when being very close to them without them noticing me. The well recognizable male said to the female: ‘You, I fear for our children, who a day’s travel from here downstream, are chasing after crocodile eggs! I fear that our oldest son, when fully stuffed sluggishly rest at the shore, being caught by an evil eagle and carried into the air and is despicably torn to pieces on a rock and eaten to the bones! If we both hurry very nimbly, we could still prevent this misfortune from happening! In the evening the lions and panthers are coming to the Nile to drink water, and travelling would be dangerous for us; but let us quickly leave this place in which not much is to be gained anyway, and there will be no danger on the long route to there, and we save our oldest son!’ The female got up and said nothing else than: ‘Then let’s hurry in the usual way!’ And when the female had said this, they moved fast like an arrow over rocks and stones along the Nile.

[3] After about fourteen days I came again to the same place, because I noticed in myself that a whole ichneumon family was present there. With silent steps I came closer and found seven

ichneumons playing and having fun on a sandbank and teasing each other in a friendly manner. But this time I also took my servant along, because he was especially good to speak to various animal species.

[4] When we came very quietly behind a bush to the place at the river and could hear their gossiping quite well, the familiar female said to the male: ‘You, look at the bush over there; behind it are lurking two people! Should we flee, since one can never trust them?’ Thereupon the male sniffed several times at our direction and said to the female: ‘Be calm, little woman! I know these two; they are not evil people, and they will not hurt us in the least. They understand us, and one of them could even speak to us if he wanted to. We will still talk to them, and then they will give us milk and bread to eat!’

[5] Upon this the female was quiet and started to joyfully jump and dance around again; since it was very happy to have saved the son finding himself in great danger. But the son was also a particularly well-build animal and expressed a way of self-feeling which could be referred to in our human moral sphere as pride.

[6] My guide thought that without any further hesitation we could get closer to the cheerful society of ichneumons and they would not flee from us. We did this, and see, the old male even showed us a kind of politeness and guided us to a comfortable place as spectators, however mentioning that we should not step onto the sandbank, because there were many crocodile eggs buried and that he now was busy to let his young practice to find the evil eggs.

[7] We did this and my servant gave the male his full assurance that he and his society does not have to fear anything and that we will feed them copiously with milk and milk-bread (cheese) during our stay. Upon this the male said: ‘This will be very good, and I will clean for you the stream from all crocodile eggs. However, wait with your charity for another two full days; since my young have to be forced by the hunger, to destroy crocodile eggs, only then will on the third day the sweet tasting

reward be at the right place.’

[8] Thereupon the servant again asked the male how it happens that crocodile eggs are planted in this area since never ever has anyone seen a crocodile in this region of the river. And the male said: ‘The crocodiles are quite clever and are very knowledgeable about nature. By their nature and experience they know, that their eggs in these high lying areas of the stream are developing better and healthier as in the low lying areas of the river. Therefore immediately after the rainy season they swim at night to here and still several day-travels further from here upwards into the area of the hard water of the river and bury countless many eggs in the warm sand. When finished with this work during the time when you big people just like us cannot get close to the shore of the river because of the mud, they return again swimming at night to the low lying areas where there are rich herds, which they successfully hunt at night. After the young are hatched they go immediately into the water and are swimming quite comfortable to the locality where their parents are usually staying. There they find food and grow very quickly. However, since we know where to find their strongest eggs, we follow them, try to destroy them as much as possible and feed ourselves with this for us good tasting food. Only finding them is initially a little troublesome, and in addition we are bothered by a few enemies; the one is the mighty inhabitant of the air, the eagle, and the second is the damned rattlesnake. But if we are together in a group, then both cannot cause us any harm. But now pay attention how we are searching and finding the eggs and destroy them immediately!’

[9] Hereupon the male jumped up and squeaked for the human ear a few monotonous, inarticulate sounds whose meaning I could not understand very well; but my sharp listening servant said that the male has given the command to search for the eggs. And right, the little animals started to sniff into the sand, and as soon as they found a place where a layer of eggs were buried in the sand, they made a very specific noise, dug quickly into the sand and exposed the eggs, and immediately began to

exterminate the found prey. They only consumed the little ones; the large ones were only bitten and thrown nimbly in the water with their front paws. Thereafter the hunt immediately started anew.

91. EXAMPLES OF INTELLIGENCE OF THE ANIMALS

[1] (The black:) “We watched them for half a day undisturbed and had a nice conversation with them, since with each step of these little animals we could clearly recognize a certain order and a well calculated plan and were at the same time highly astonished about the special skill, by which these truly superhumanly intelligent beings carried out their work. I thought about a tiredness of these workers; but no trace about this. The longer the work continued, it always started with even a bigger zeal than before.

[2] After about three hours according to your time measurement the male came back and said: With this sandbank they could not finish within four days, and at the opposite shore is also a sandbank with many crocodile eggs buried. They must also be destroyed otherwise it would be swarming with crocodiles and in ten years there would be so many that no human could walk one step in the lower area, without stepping on to a crocodile. The people of these regions therefore could not be thankful enough towards the ichneumons for their continued effort to destroy crocodile eggs at both shores in the lower- and upper regions of this river.

[3] But my servant asked the cheerful male, how it happens with such diligence that there are still crocodiles in the river and flourish. The male said by being very serious: ‘The great Spirit of all nature wants it like this that the crocodiles of this stream should never be completely exterminated; since also their destination is to serve the earth and its inhabitants. However, they are not allowed to become dominant; therefore we are there to keep their multiplication within boundaries. The great Spirit has all this foreseen wisely and everything must happen like

that, so that one life finds its perfection in another. The transitions are always bitter, but for this the higher being is pleasant!

[4] Then the servant asked him how he came to the knowledge of a highest Spirit. The little male started to giggle and this was a kind of laughter. When the male finished giggling, it said to the servant: 'We then daily see His sun in the sky, and how all kind of good spirits are streaming from the sun towards us! From where else should they come than from the large light-spirit of the sun?!'

[5] And the servant again asked the little male: 'Do you also honor such great light-spirit?' Said the male: 'This is quite a strange question from a big human! You surely will not be more silly than we weak animals? If we all the time do with pleasure and undauntedly what His will placed into our nature-life, we then honor the great Spirit in the best manner possible?! See, therein lies everything, that one does the will of him, whom you really honor!' With this the male left us again and returned with all diligence to his work. However, we left the place and went home to engage our domestic activities.

[6] A few days afterwards we provided the little animals with milk and cheese, which they consumed with great pleasure, and upon this they rested for a whole day from the work.

[7] The servant asked the little male if crocodile meat could also be eaten by people, of course when cooked on the fire before. The male said: 'The meat of the stomach yes, since this is digestible; but with the other meat nothing can be done because it is indigestible hard. The hippopotamus would be better and even better the hippopotamus calf, which however stays mostly near the sea deep underwater and comes only to the surface during times of underwater storms and then plays with the vessels of the people.'

[8] After this explanation all seven sprung up and swam to the opposite shore where we did not follow them, since we had sufficiently learned about their nature and their character.

[9] I only have told you about this example of the ichneumons,

since this was something completely new for me and because I have never found so much cleverness in any other animal known to me.

[10] Also among the birds one find very wise characters. Especially the ibises and storks, cranes, wild geese and swallows belong to it. Among the four foot earth animals the camel and even more so the elephant, the donkey, the dog, apes, goats, then the fox, the bear and the lion are the most intelligent and use a quite clear language. The intelligence of other domestic animals is weaker and their language is more incomprehensible and silly. Among the cold blooded animals the large lizard is tops; with us it is regarded almost as a prophet and informs us often for a few days in advance what is about to happen. Therefore we look after these animals quite well and feed them with milk and cheese.

[11] It is in the highest degree astonishing where these animals are getting their knowledge from. Now, I surely did not tell you a fable, although what I have told you now must appear to the inexperienced whites as a fable. However, if they cannot believe it at all, that everything is just like I told you, for a practical demonstration bring a completely foreign donkey here, and my servant will ask him a few questions and tell him to do certain things, and the animal will surely punctually carry out what the servant ask him to do!"

92. DISCUSSION WITH THE DONKEY OF MARCUS

[1] Says the old Marcus to Me: "Lord, should I bring a donkey, but one of my natural ones, to here? Since the two newly created ones could give rise to prejudice!"

[2] I said: "Yes, yes, do this; since from this there will follow a quite important teaching!"

[3] Marcus quickly went away and returned with a donkey and said with a smile to the black: "There is one of your world-wise; do with him as you please!"

[4] The black called his servant. He immediately directed with a

voice of a donkey all kind of questions to the animal, and see, the animal told him many things about the household of Marcus, as well as about its earlier very crude owner, his name and many astonishing facts, what the black servant could not normally have known, which astounded Marcus in the highest degree. Finally the servant ordered the donkey to walk three times around our table and at the end let hear everyone quite loudly seven times the ‘j-a’. The donkey immediately obeyed and after that left by himself.

[5] Upon this the black leader asked our society if this was an unbelievable fable.

[6] And Cyrenius, overwhelmed by amazement, said: “No, no, friend, this is no fable; but I nearly want to believe that also our famous fable composer, Aesop, could speak to animals! Lord, this is again a new property of the blacks, of which we had no idea earlier on! Yes, if this continues, it will take quite a while until we are finished with these blacks. It is coming better all the time, increasingly more unbelievable and incomprehensible! In the books of your script I once read about a donkey who spoke to the prophet Bileam who mistreated him too much; but what is this where this black is being classically told the whole biography of this quite harmless donkey! And that this was no poetry of the black, the old Marcus can vouch for!

[7] This and that is quite alright and I have nothing against it, if I together with all the other wise teachings which I heard up to now, could only imagine a little this new miraculous phenomena, namely how is it possible to converse with animals by linguistic means! The well-being of humanity will not depend on this explanation; but since the highly extraordinary miraculous appearance, going forth from the human side, is there, I would like to know a little more about the how and whereby! How can animals converse with people linguistically, and how a person with animals? – Lord, give us just a few short hints in this regard!”

[8] I said: “People who are able to do this are therefore not more advanced than you are who cannot do this; since the closer any

person's soul is to animal souls, the more it has the ability to converse with them, of course only in its life orderly, fully purified condition. If she merges too much with the flesh, she loses these properties and the dark laws of matter take its place, and the soul is then harmed by everything what also can harm the flesh.”

93. DEVELOPMENT OF THE HUMAN RADIATING SPHERE

[1] (The Lord:) “But the ability to talk to animals does not necessarily require to be Moors. Also the whites can achieve this, if they have completely purified themselves. Once a soul is completely pure and therefore also completely healthy and strong, she begins to push so to speak the excess of her outer life-sphere over the borders of her body, and the more life-stronger she has become in herself the further the reach.

[2] This should be taken like someone imagining a still weakly glowing coal in a completely dark room. The piece of coal will now spread just enough light that one hardly can see it where it lies. If one blows away the darkening ash as a so to speak soul-matter from its surface, the light will already become stronger and reach a little further, so that one begins to clearly recognize the immediate vicinity. If one increases the blowing more and more, from its light glowing surface there will be spreading sufficient light that one to some extend can begin to clearly discern the various items in the whole room. If the coal is then made white flame glowing, it will become quite bright in the whole room, and one will be able to distinguish all the items sufficiently illuminated also according to their color.

[3] It is the same with a pure soul. The glowing with ash covered coal resembles a soul completely submerged in the flesh. She uses all her matt glowing life-fire to form the dark matter surrounding her; leaving as good as nothing for the formation of an outer life-sphere! And such a very material soul can impossibly ever feel something about a special and higher

property. In this case there is nothing about any mastery over all creatures, similar there is nothing regarding the seeing in the spheres of the soul-like life dimensions, nothing with the hearing of an inner spiritual voice and even less so the understanding of any animal- or plant language, all things which were so familiar to the patriarchs like to you the most familiar outer form of things or any case. Since what should be lively illuminated by the spiritual outer life-sphere of the soul, if she as supposing to be self shining cannot produce sufficient life-light-ether, to see herself and who she is?!

[4] Such a soul in the end nearly does not know anything of her own existence, does not at all know her base, and if she hears anything spiritual about herself, it disgusts her; she frightens to a kind of fainting if she sees something which resembles anything of a departed soul, and despairs at the sight of great miracles. What should become of such a soul?

[5] Ah, when however a soul, after she has received a warranted message from somewhere or has been breezed spiritually by self-conviction and becomes life-glowing like the coal indicated above, she begins firstly to feel herself as a soul and recognizes the ground on which she is based. If the breezing becomes stronger and stronger, she, as herself more light and light, will recognize her individuality more brightly, purer and more discernible from matter, and her light will begin to reach beyond herself and will begin to illuminate her outer life-sphere.

[6] The more intense and the more constant the spiritual life winds kindle the soul, the more life-white-glowing and the further away beyond herself the outer life-light-sphere becomes illuminated and brighter, and whatever steps into the outer life-light-sphere will also become soul-life illuminated and is soon and easily recognized and well assessed by the illuminating soul.

[7] Once the soul has reached for herself the highest possible light, thus similar to the flaming and white-glowing coal, her outer life-light-sphere, outgoing from only the soul, will have reached the furthest possible and most intensified expansion, by

which means she already becomes a ruler of all creatures, because by means of such her outer life-light-sphere she can engage in a perfectly intelligent and most powerful effectuating correspondence with all her close-by standing creatures.”

94. THE RADIATING LIGHT SPHERE OF LIFE OF MOSES AND THE PATRIARCHS

[1] (The Lord:) “The old, devout patriarchs had such a strong outer life-light-sphere, that they were shining at night, also for the eyes of the flesh. Moses’ soul shone by day because of his fiery love for God so bright, after he had to do with God on Sinai, that his face radiated more delightfully and brighter than the light of the sun at midday, and Moses had to cover his face with a threefold blanket, so that the other people could look at him. Moses’ soul has afterwards reached the highest perfection among the people of this earth; therefore all creatures had to obey him most punctually. He was standing in the most intelligent correspondence with all creature beings, by that also found My will everywhere, showed it to the blind people and indicated to them precisely the way, on which every person could reach the perfection of his soul, if he only wanted it firmly enough. For this purpose he founded a separate prophet school, which still exist today, but of course in the same manner as the new, false ark, since the real one by Moses has long since lost its power and effect.

[2] If Moses also could have reached the rebirth of the spirit in his highly perfected soul, which he only can become part of, when I have risen just like Elijah, however without a fire carriage, this greatest of all prophets on this earth could have determined new orbits for all the stars, and the great suns would have submit to his will, just like the waves of the red sea, and just like the hard granite rock had to give a rich water fountain where Moses wanted it; since he ordered the banned spirits of the rock, and they understood the tongue of Moses well and became active after recognizing his will.

[3] That the old wise could not only correspond mainly with animals, but also with all plants and even with rocks and metals, with the water, with the air, with the fire and with all spirits of the earth, is testified by very trustworthy witnesses from the whole script, namely the book of the judges, the prophets, the five books of Moses and still a lot of other books and recordings and of course some already strongly distorted traditions of the people. The artificially constructed conversations with grass, trees, rocks and water by the Essenes in their miracle gardens, is nothing else than a bare imitation of what once existed in reality!

[4] These blacks have now shown it to you from all angles, the state of power of an unpolluted human soul, and I Myself have now explained manifold the reason to you as clear as sunshine, and therefore I'm of the opinion that you can accept this an absolute truth, and this even more so, if I tell you that this has taken place with people in the past, still takes place and will take place in future.

[5] At the same time you still today have a living proof with your shepherds, because some prudent shepherds guide their herds by peculiar names and noises, let them recognize their will and the herds suddenly act accordingly. Does the donkey or the ox, even if somewhat slow, not understand the signs of its master and guide completely? Who does not know that even the fierce lion always recognizes his benefactor and never, even in its fiercest rage, will harm him in any way? This proves, that the animals in their own way, also have an understanding, an appraisal and often a very sharp ability of recognition and at many opportunities indicate to people, awaiting dangers, by all kinds of gestures and often by striking contumacies and save people if they pay attention to it.

[6] From where originated the haruspices among the heathens who are still today want to recognize all kinds of things from the song and flight of birds and from the gesticulations of other animals? These are shadows of a former reality, of which we just spoke.”

95. THE REASON OF THE LORD'S REVELATIONS

[1] (The Lord:) "I'm not explaining this to you to take you back to the primordial circumstances of the first people of the earth, but only therefore, to place you again on the level of pure knowledge while such occurrences still can take place, so that you do not need to believe this in a superstitious miraculous way, but rather to assess this according to the full and quite natural truth and act accordingly. Since if one day you would come with the spreading of My teaching to people like these blacks who are now before us, and you would see them committing actions which you just now have seen sufficiently, you would soon be overwhelmed to such an extent, that you would allow it to be preached another gospel by such miracle performing people and soon deviate from My ways and thereby hardly ever reach the rebirth of the spirit, instead of bringing My gospel to the foreign people.

[2] However, if you know about everything how things were and took place in the world, still are and will happen, the danger to be misled cannot happen that easily, except you would allow yourself to be deceived by a newly awoken self-interest, which of course would, correctly concluded, cause your downfall.

[3] You do not need to perfect your souls for the sake to be able to perform all the properties of the forefathers faithfully explained to you – since this does not give to any soul a true, blissful everlasting life because from now on everyone of you has the very new reason to perfect and purify his soul, to reach, by the actual observance of My word, the conditional rebirth of the spirit in his entire soul. Since who achieved this, has suddenly more of the most wonderful abilities in himself, than all the old fathers ever possessed despite all their soul perfection! He will within one moment more easily view all star-worlds and suns and even hear and understand their still most far away language, than the old seers and miracle performers could see and assess in their closest country vicinity.

[4] Yes, they performed miracles, but did not understand them.

They were powerful, but were not able to recognize the strength and could apply it only then correctly and useful, if by times they have been awakened by My penetrating spirit for it. They often also made use of their strength, even if it was not necessary, almost like the children who during their playful activities often apply more strength, which never ever can be of any use to them, except perhaps to exercise their natural strength.

[5] However, it is completely different with the omnipotent strength of the spirit, once completely reborn into the soul, actually being inborn; since by that he enters in full unity of My infinitive and eternal omnipotence, My love and My wisdom, insight, recognition and My will! Once he is in full possession of all this as My most true child, how could he still have a wish in himself, to effectuate things, which once the old fathers, just like these Moors now, could perform only piece by piece and imperfectly?!

[6] That you are not capable of it any more, is not due to your will, but the time and its wrong customs. Therefore I now have come Myself, to give to you for the lost small paradise, the whole heaven of the purest and mightiest spirit out of Myself, and I think on your behalf, that you can be completely content with this!

[7] Of course, to reach the spiritualization of your soul, it will require a lot of hard work and activity; and when it concerns a specific and extremely certain attainment of the most biggest and most highest property of life, you can endure a few things! Since all the wondrous properties of a perfected human soul and all the treasures of this earth, cannot be called a smallest dew drop in comparison to the large ocean of the world, when precisely following My word and will, awaiting you with much greater certainty than the physical death of your body, which in any way will embarrass you less, than it embarrasses you, to leave an old, rotten and every hour ready collapsing house and to move into a new house forever and ever, which cannot be damaged by any storms.

[8] Verily I say it to you: All reborn out of My word and actions afterwards shall not feel the death of the body nor having anxiously premonitions about it like the world people and some animals, because they will voluntarily leave the body, when I, requiring them for higher purposes, call them from this world into My house! – Have you now taken all this to heart and understand it?”

[9] Say all: “Yes, Lord, You our highest love, You our everything! Everything, everything we give for Your love, for Your so endless big mercy, which You have given to us here! We surely would not know what to ask any more!”

96. THE MIRACULOUS MEAL

[1] I said: “It is now already one hour past noon; therefore Mark, arrange for a meal! My Raphael will help you! After the meal we shall see what the day has in store for us. All of you take seats at the tables, and you, Raphael, remove the two heaps of bread from our table and only then help Mark!”

[2] Raphael did so in the twinkling of an eye and then said to Mark, “Should I help you in a humanly way or my way? Tell me how you would rather have it! It would draw less attention, if I helped you in a humanly way; my way, however, we would save a lot of time, and that is something very precious! Thus I will do what you want me to do, and you will not have to lay out anything anywhere, as if anything would have been missed.”

[3] Mark says: “Yes, friend from the heavens, your way of putting the meals on the tables as fast as possible would certainly be very advantageous, because despite the assistance of Cyrenius’ servants it takes a pretty long time until the meals for so many people are brought to the tables; there is a catch, however! There are not enough meals completely prepared! If your celestial skill can do something there, that would be the most appropriate place for it; otherwise it will probably still be another good half hour until everything will be ready to be laid on the tables!”

[4] Raphael says very jovially to Mark: “That is what I mean as well: prepare as fast as possible, and just as fast put the seemly meals and beverages on the tables! I am telling you, where there is a will, there is a way! If you want to, it will only take me the shortest instant and all meals, prepared superbly, will be on the tables in front of the guests!”

[5] Mark says: “That would be fine; but the people will regard it as heavenly magic and be understandably afraid of the food, and hardly dare to enjoy it – especially the blacks who are already so alert that nothing escapes them!”

[6] Raphael says: “Oh, they will mind the least because they are already used to miracles! Also, it is already late and the Lord has in mind for after the meal something of great importance that only He knows; so it is obviously better if we do it with my spiritual speed, and no one will resent that. At the same time this is the last lunch the Lord will have here and it will not harm if it looks a bit miraculous! – Do you not agree?”

[7] Mark says: “Absolutely! You, as a first spirit from the heavens, would know and understand better than I what is more appropriate and advantageous here! Thus act as you think is best!”

[8] After Mark said this to Raphael, they both went to the kitchen where, as usual, Mark’s wife, his daughters and sons, and several of Cyrenius’ servants had their hands full; still, the meal for so many people was only half ready.

[9] Mark said: “Oh, it will be another hour until everything is ready!”

[10] His wife says: “Yes, my beloved husband, the two of us cannot work wonders and it cannot be rushed. That means one has to persevere patiently until everything is done!”

[11] Mark says: “You know what, you and the daughters just stop the cooking, simmering and frying; Raphael, as a true fast cook, will finish it soon!”

[12] The wife says: “That would be good because everyone is quite tired from all the work!”

[13] With that all the cooks stepped back and Raphael said: “You may also go to your table now! Everything is already on the tables, and all the guests are already eating their meals. Come old Mark, and sit down at the table as my assistant, and eat from my kitchen, and assess if I can cook! Your wife, your children, and Cyrenius’ cooks already have in front of the house their own table laden with the same meals and drinks.”

[14] They all leave the kitchen and when they see the hundreds of guests eating and drinking at the tables, Mark says very amazed by this occurrence: “How is this possible? You have not left my side for an instant and all the tables are abundantly full, as one can see! You could not have prepared any meal and still less have put it on the tables. I beg you to tell me just a little of how you accomplished this; truly I can understand anything more easily than your despairingly unfathomable speed, especially with actions that are bound to a certain timeframe order inevitable in this world! I beg you again to give me just a small hint of how you prepared the meals and from where you got them! Because nothing from the half prepared ones in my kitchen got on all these tables, as I just saw them there resting safely and awaiting their purpose!”

[15] Raphael says: “You did not look closely enough; all your supplies are spent! Look if it is not so!”

[16] Mark takes a quick look, and finds the kitchen and the pantry cleared out. He then comes out even more amazed and says: “Ah, friend, it is unbearable with you! Truly, I will not take a bite of anything for 3 days if you do not give me a hint on how you did that!”

[17] Raphael says: “Let us go to the table; there, we shall exchange a few words on the matter!”

[18] With that Mark and Raphael come to our table, where the atmosphere was already quite lively. Raphael immediately grabs a nice fish, puts it in front of Mark and coerces him to eat it. Mark urges him to explain the fast cooking and the equally fast serving, but Raphael says very kindly: “Now, dear friend, eat and drink! After both of us have received the refreshment

necessary to the body from the blessed food and the blessed drink, we will have a couple of words about my fast cooking and serving!”

[19] Mark follows Raphael, and eats and drinks heartily.

97. HOW MIRACLES COME TO PASS

[1] When the meal is over, after about an hour, Mark again says to Raphael with regard to the explanation: “Well, heavenly friend, will you tell me something?!”

[2] Raphael says: “Yes, friend, I will explain it to you; but despite all explanations the matter will still remain a miraculous one as long as you are not baptized with the Holy Spirit from Heaven! When God’s Spirit will have arisen completely in your soul and will be one with it, you will clearly understand all this without any explanation; now, however, even the most logical explanation will give you awfully little enlightenment! For even the most perfect soul will never grasp what is purely spiritual; only the spirit in it can grasp that and the soul eventually through its spirit! But because you want to get a hint, look around you, and tell me what you see!”

[3] Mark looks around astonished and sees at every table a slew of boys that resemble Raphael a lot, who attend on the many guests and constantly provide them with everything; more boys even get fresh fish from the sea, hurry with them to the kitchen and right away with prepared ones to the tables because the Moors are very hungry; furthermore, the good taste of the food appealed to them.

[4] Raphael asked Mark: “Do you understand now how it is possible, and even easy, for me to accomplish so much, so fast, particularly if you bear in mind that a spirit, as the penetrating principle of the innermost part of beings and things, can most effectively and at the same time most successfully control and use all matter as it wants and likes, and nothing can stop it?! Besides, as an archangel, I have an uncountable number of assistants who depend on my will in every moment. As soon as

I want something from the Lord that will immediately fills countless servants subordinate to me, who start working at once and easily accomplish a requested action so fast you can hardly imagine! I myself do not do anything of course; but through my archangelic will eons are destined for action as their innermost existential reason and a requested action is thus easily accomplished very fast, and that is that much more certain because a long time ago everything was designed and prepared for some action by the Lord and then by us; should it be necessary for you, it can then be transferred into the visible act already completed a while ago.

[5] You saw how a donkey came into existence up on the mountain; and look, everything comes into existence like that, when our will inspires primordial spirits originating in our thoughts to a certain action organized one way or another and coerces them to act! My friend, that alone should serve you as the explanation you wanted from me! I cannot tell you more, using the very limited words of this world and language! Also, do not ask again because until you become a spirit in your soul yourself, you will not understand more of all this than you do now! Because no creature can ever penetrate by itself into the knowledge and cognition of a pure spirit! – Do you understand a little more now?”

[6] Mark, however, was satisfied with this explanation and said: “Thank you for this very good explanation; now, taking everything I saw and heard, I understand to my fullest satisfaction how you, dearest heavenly friend, perform your miracles, and especially the fastest execution of the feats you requested. And now I can make the assertion that something rather natural occurs during every miracle, and it always comes down to a union of powers if any feat has to be accomplished either very fast or in a periodical arrangement. Yes, I can now find a certain small similarity between your spiritual miracles and the magic of the earthly mages and that lies in what you called providence and preparation!

[7] You know, my heavenly friend, I am just saying it forthright as I am thinking it! It might be hard for you to perform such a difficult miracle all of a sudden without any preparation and providence, as it would be for a mage without any preparation and any previous agreements with other people to aid him. Of course, none of the other people should know anything about it since it would ruin the magic! I come to this surely hardly refutable conclusion: All things are possible for the Lord and for you, however never unforeseen, but rather prepared for ages maybe and thus spiritually set a long time ago to be carried out periodically! What is performed as visible feat now, has been spiritually destined and prepared a long time ago!

[8] This is why a world like ours cannot come into such perfect existence with a pure almighty 'fiat'! ('Let it be done!'), but with time, following long prior preparations after which this present world, as it exists now, had to come into existence as an inevitable result. For the same reason, it is practically impossible for anything to come into perfect and durable existence all of a sudden. Whatever comes into existence fast, decays equally fast. Lightning, for example, forms fast, and vanishes equally fast. An opposite effect is the fact that for something once in durable existence it is practically impossible to decay all of a sudden, but rather gradually as it came into being. Something that has not been destined and prepared cannot ever be carried out even through a dictum supported by the strongest will, be it a case of evolution or a case of decomposition and decay. Thus everything is to be regarded only as a temporary miracle, and every event is a necessary result of many gradual processes!

[9] You see, my friend from the heavens, praise the Lord; it seems to me that I understood your explanation more profoundly than you imagined in the beginning! Yes, my dear Raphael, the old Romans aren't quite such fools as one might imagine! Well, what do you think now, my friend? Did I understand you, or not?"

98. GOD'S PROVIDENCE AND THE FREE WILL OF MAN

[1] Raphael says smiling: "You got a small part of it; but you are quite on the wrong track with your 'inevitable results' and our 'necessary providence' and 'lengthy preparations'. A few rough examples will convince you entirely of that! Look anywhere around you, assign a spot, and tell me on a whim what kind of fully developed and with ripe fruit laden tree or trees you would like to have! Or would you like different species? In short, just speak the word and they will come into enduring existence not destined and unprepared, and a millennium will not thoroughly erase the traces of their existence! So tell me what you want and you will at once see a miracle that has never been prepared and destined!"

[2] Mark says: "Yes, yes, that would be fine, my friend, as long as you can fully convince me that my will and my desire are under my complete control! That might seem in the end a lot more difficult to accomplish than the different fruit trees on a random spot that I would ask for! You have seeded some strong doubt in me with regard to the fact that even you, almighty spirits, are capable of performing a pure miracle out of thin air, without any providence and preparation! I do not want to completely deny the matter, but judging by everything that ever was, is and will be on this earth, this is hard to accept, because godly omniscience raises its voice a little too loudly against it and one cannot oppose that with the possible empty claim that God deliberately exerted his universal knowledge for something unwillingly and unknowingly. But if God could not keep Himself completely ignorant for ages on the matter that at one time His angel Raphael will miraculously bring trees into existence according to a man's wishes, it will be difficult to prove that this miracle has not been destined and prepared ages ago! It most definitely was spiritually destined!"

[3] Raphael says: "It does not matter, if it only has not been prepared up to materialization itself! In addition, man's will is free to such a degree that neither the Lord nor we would take

any action to disturb it in the least through any providence and even less any preparation. Thus you can be completely assured that your free will is not predestined and even less prepared. Therefore, ask and you will see that the Lord, either Himself or through me, His servant, will without any preparation bring into lasting existence the fruit trees you freely requested!”

[4] Mark contemplates this for a bit and says after a while: “My friend, do they necessarily have to be fruit trees? I could incidentally want something different! Could that also be miraculously brought into existence?”

[5] Raphael says: “Oh certainly, one or the other is all the same to us! Ask for what you want and it will be there!”

[6] After this assurance Mark ponders a while longer whether something would occur to him with which he could drive the angel into a corner. But because nothing comes to his mind he says to Raphael: “Then make for me a better habitable and sturdier house that will be a prim inn for strangers and locals and a well fenced garden laden with all sorts of enjoyable fruit trees; the date tree should not be missing and a fresh wellspring should flow through the garden!”

[7] The angel says: “But my friend, will that not be too much at once?”

[8] Mark says: “Aha, my friend, were you caught off balance? Yes, yes, perhaps it cannot be done without any providence and preparation after all! But I do not want to force you to anything; whatever you can miraculously bring into existence, do it, and ignore what I asked for!”

[9] The angel says: “It will be done exactly as you asked for. In the name of the Lord, let everything that you asked of me, be here! Go and look at everything that is there and tell me afterwards if it is fine with you! If you have anything to object then do it, because things can still be changed! It will be too late tomorrow because we will certainly not be here any longer. Therefore, go and look at everything!”

99. THE NEW HOUSE OF MARCUS. A MIRACLE OF RAPHAEL.

[1] Mark looked around and was taken aback by the sight of everything that had come into existence in an instant. A beautiful brick house stood completed on the right, northeast of the old fisherman's house and reached with its southeast front closely to the sea. It had one floor with a comfortable hallway around the whole house, and on the ground level there was a spacious kitchen, a large pantry and 18 chambers, among which 5 sitting-rooms and 13 large rooms for all sorts of agricultural purposes, like various cereal chambers, meat chambers, chambers for fruits, vegetables, for legumes and root crops. One large chamber displayed a water tank build with white marble, which measured twenty square fathom and in all had a consistent depth of six feet; the water, however, was just four feet deep, which was enough for keeping noble fish.

[2] This inner fish tank got its cleanest water from an entirely new, rich spring; the water got in from the bottom through small but numerous openings in a stone slab and got up to a determined level. A drainpipe ran from there to the sea, but it could be plugged from outside if one wanted to have the tank full of water. A beautiful, open work, two and a half feet tall handrail, also made of white marble went around the water tank; on one side, in case the water tank would be filled with water, there was a dainty drain that went through the wall of the house and ended in the sea not far from the deeper drainpipe. The walls and the floor were also covered in white marble, but the chamber's ceiling was made of the cleanest and hardest cedar wood without any knots and splints. This chamber was illuminated through five windows, which all had marble frames and each measured a height of five and a width of three feet. The windows had very clear crystal slabs and were designed to open and close, as was every other window of the house.

[3] The main door was made of gold like gleaming ore; all the doors to the rooms, however, were made of the best cedar wood

worked quite delicately and daintily and were properly equipped with good bolts and locks. The entire first floor was daintily paneled with cedar wood, and every room offered a wonderful view. At the same time, all the rooms on the ground floor, like the ones on the first floor, were comprehensively furnished and equipped with everything that a good inn might possibly require, and the cereal chamber was full of grains, and the pantry full of everything that is needed in a kitchen. In short, it was not only the demanded house solidly built and exactly according to Mark's idea, which he had had for a long time and was akin to a daydream, but it was also most richly stocked for years with all kinds of food supplies and other supplies.

[4] Behind the house there were stables for all sorts of animals, and several huts for fishing equipment were built most tastefully and at the same time most properly and were richly equipped with everything necessary. Around all the new buildings stretched a tightly fenced garden of twenty yoke [eleven and a half hectare = almost 30,000 of today's acres] formerly an abandoned sand steppe and now the most fertile soil, cultivated with all sorts of the best fruit trees. A few yoke were cultivated with the best grape vines, which were laden with the nicest and most juicy, already ripe grapes. Vegetables were not lacking either.

[5] In the middle of the garden there was a health spa with a marble temple. It had two distinct pools: one for healing the ones suffering from gout with very warm spring water, and the second for healing lepers supplied by lukewarm sulfur and sodium wells that were led there from the core of the earth by Raphael's power according to My will. At the same time he saw a seaport bordered by square stone blocks and five big, perfectly built ships with sails and oars in the very spacious harbor that had an entrance, which, even though 33 feet wide [10.8 meters], could be closed off completely with a iron chain by night. This harbor was exactly like Mark had often imagined, and he had to keep rubbing his eyes while inspecting everything that had

miraculously appeared because he had the impression that he was sleeping and thus seeing these things in his dream.

[6] When he finished the walkthrough, which lasted almost an hour, he came back almost dizzy and said fully amazed: “Is this all really true, or am I am seeing it all in some sort of blessed dream? No, no, it cannot be true! That is how I have repeatedly pictured an inn in my idle mind and have seen it several times in my daydreams – and you, friend from the heavens, have put me into an artificial sleep and I have viewed my own ideas in a dream once again!”

[7] Raphael says: “You doubting Roman, you! If this was all a dream, it would not be still visible and you will not claim that you are still sleeping and dreaming, will you? Send your wife and your children to look at what is there, and then they will come and help you out of your dream!”

[8] Mark says, looking at the new house again: “Oh, it is not a dream, it is resounding reality! – Will it, however, last?”

100. CHILDREN OF THE WORLD AND CHILDREN OF GOD

[1] Raphael speaks: “Did I not tell you that all this, that is, everything solidly built, will not be completely erased in a thousand years? Only the different fruit trees, the noble shrubs and the plants, as well as the ships will not last that long; but the stonework will last a very long time! Even after two thousand years, traces of it will still be visible; of course, no one will still believe in supernatural builders of this wall. Even in the present time, your nearest neighbors will say as soon as they see this that everything was built by the present Romans, since many strong hands can perform miracles as well! You, however, accept what the people say because, even though ten times ten times hundred thousand people live in a land after the current fashion, you will hardly find among all of them five thousand who after many discussions would reasonably believe you. But neither you nor we, heavenly spirits, have any need for blind

belief. It does not even matter whether many or few believe; the Lord came into this world because of His few children and not because of secular people. And it will stay like this until the end of this world and its times!

[2] Whenever the Lord will reveal Himself again in this world, either only through word, or at times even personally for moments, He will at all times do so only to His true children, who are from above! The world and its children will enjoy His presence very little or not at all! Eternity is long enough to bring them to some extremely inferior light.

[3] Do not believe that this supreme light from the heavens will ever enter all the people in the world! Only the true children, in small numbers at all times, will be given plenty of it, and the children of the world will built from their scurrility temples and places of worship for false gods and fence them in with iron laws and foolish, blind rules, but will never be able to touch the few true children, of which the Lord will at all times most faithfully make sure. That is why no Jeremiah should intone his lamentations among secular people any longer! But go to the Lord now and thank Him for such a great gift!”

[4] Here comes Mark and wants to start thanking Me with pomp of the most chosen words.

[5] I however say: “Save your tongue the trouble because I have already heard the gratitude of your heart and do not need the one of the tongue! Is every honest innkeeper not worth his reward? You are an honest innkeeper too and have assiduously hosted us for almost eight days now; we cannot ask this of you for nothing! This inn will be for you and your descendants a good source of sustenance! But you make sure that My name will stay strong in this place, that is, with your descendants because with the loss of My name from their hearts, they would also soon lose everything else! Whoever loses everything in this world, but keeps My name in spite of that, would not have lost anything, but would have gained everything; but whoever loses My name from his heart, has lost everything, even if he owns all the world’s riches!”